# marantz®

Model SR7001/SR8001 User Guide

**AV Surround Receiver** 

#### **ENGLISH**

#### WARRANTY

For warranty information, contact your local Marantz distributor.

#### RETAIN YOUR PURCHASE RECEIPT

Your purchase receipt is your permanent record of a valuable purchase. It should be kept in a safe place to be referred to as necessary for insurance purposes or when corresponding with Marantz.

#### **IMPORTANT**

When seeking warranty service, it is the responsibility of the consumer to establish proof and date of purchase. Your purchase receipt or invoice is adequate for such proof.

#### FOR U.K. ONLY

This undertaking is in addition to a consumer's statutory rights and does not affect those rights in any way.

### **FRANÇAIS**

#### **GARANTIE**

Pour des informations sur la garantie, contacter le distributeur local Marantz.

#### CONSERVER L'ATTESTATION D'ACHAT

L'attestation d'achat est la preuve permanente d'un achat de valeur. La conserver en lieu sur pour s'y reporter aux fins d'obtention d'une couverture d'assurance ou dans le cadre de correspondances avec Marantz.

#### **IMPORTANT**

Pour l'obtention d'un service couvert par la garantie, il incombe au client d'établir la preuve de l'achat et d'en corroborer la date. Le reçu ou la facture constituent des preuves suffisantes.

#### DEUTSCH

#### **GARANTIE**

Bei Garantiefragen wenden Sie sich bitte an Ihren Marantz-Händler.

#### HEBEN SIE IHRE QUITTING GUT AUF

Die Quittung dient Ihnen als bleibende Unterlage für Ihren wertvollen Einkauf Das Aufbewahren der Quittung ist wichtig, da die darin enthaltenen Angaben für Versicherungswecke oder bei Korrespondenz mit Marantz angeführt werden müssen.

#### WICHTIG!

BeiGarantiefragenmußderKundeeineKaufunterlage mit Kaufdatum vorlegen. Ihren Quittung oder Rechnung ist als Unterlage ausreichend.

#### **NEDERLANDS**

#### **GARANTIE**

Voor inlichtingen omtrent garantie dient u zich tot uw plaatselijke Marantz.

#### UW KWITANTIE. KASSABON E.D. BEWAREN

Uw kwitantie, kassabon e.d. vormen uw bewijs van aankoop van een waardevol artikel en dienen op een veilige plaats bewaard te worden voor evt, verwijzing bijv, in verbend met verzekering of bij correspondentie met Marantz.

#### **BELANGRIJK**

Bij een evt, beroep op de garantie is het de verantwoordelijkheid van de consument een gedateerd bewijs van aankoop te tonen. Uw kassabon of factuurzijn voldoende bewijs.

#### **ESPAÑOL**

#### GARANTIA

Para obtener información acerca de la garantia póngase en contacto con su distribuidor Marantz.

#### GUARDE SU RECIBO DE COMPRA

Su recibo de compra es su prueba permanente de haber adquirido un aparato de valor, Este recibo deberá guardarlo en un lugar seguro y utilizarlo como referencia cuando tenga que hacer uso del seguro o se ponga en contacto con Marantz.

#### IMPORTANTE

Cuando solicite el servicio otorgado por la garantia el usuario tiene la responsabilidad de demonstrar cuándo efectuó la compra. En este caso, su recibo de compra será la prueba apropiada.

#### **ITALIANO**

#### **GARANZIA**

L'apparecchio è coperto da una garanzia di buon funzionamento della durata di un anno, o del periodo previsto dalla legge, a partire dalla data di acquisto comprovata da un documento attestante il nominativo del Rivenditore e la data di vendita. La garanzia sarà prestata con la sostituzione o la riparazione gratuita delle parti difettose.

Non sono coperti da garanzia difetti derivanti da uso improprio, errata installazione, manutenzione effettuata da personale non autorizzato o, comunque, da circostanze che non possano riferirsi a difetti di funzionamento dell'apparecchio. Sono inoltre esclusi dalla garanzia gli interventi inerenti l'installazione e l'allacciamento agli impianti di alimentazione.

Gli apparecchi verranno riparati presso i nostri Centri di Assistenza Autorizzati. Le spese ed i rischi di trasporto sono a carico del cliente.

La casa costruttrice declina ogni responsabilità per danni diretti o indiretti provocati dalla inosservanza delle prescrizioni di installazione, uso e manutenzione dettagliate nel presente manuale o per guasti dovuti ad uso continuato a fini professionali.

#### **SVENSKA**

#### **GARANTI**

För information om garantin, kontakta Marantz lokalagent.

#### SPAR KVITTOT

Kvittot är ett inköpsbevis på en värdefull vara. Det skall förvaras säkert och hänvisas till vid försäkringsfall eller vidkorrespondens mod Marantz.

#### VIKTIGT

Fö att garantin skall gälla är det kundens sak att framställa bevis och datum om köpet. Kvitto eller faktura är tillräokligt bevis fö detta.

# **CE MARKING**

C English

The SR7001/SR8001 is in conformity with the EMC directive and low-voltage directive.

**( F** Français

Le SR7001/SR8001 est conforme à la directive EMC et à la directive sur les basses tensions.

CE Deutsch

Das Modell SR7001/SR8001 entspricht den EMC-Richtlinien und den Richtlinien für Niederspannungsgeräte.

Nederlands

De SR7001/SR8001 voldoet aan de EMC eisen en de vereisten voor laag-voltage.

CE Español

El SR7001/SR8001 está de acuerdo con las normas EMC y las relacionadas con baja tensión.

C \_ Italiano

Il SR7001/SR8001 è conforme alle direttive CEE ed a quelle per i bassi voltaggi.

C Svenska

SR7001/SR8001 är tillverkad i enlighet med EMC direktiven och direktiven för lågvoltsutrusning.

#### **English**

#### **WARNINGS**

- Do not expose the equipment to rain or moisture.
- Do not remove the cover from the equipment.
- Do not insert anything into the equipment through the ventilation holes.
- Do not handle the mains cord with wet hands.
- Do not cover the ventilation with any items such as tablecloths, newspapers, curtains, etc.
- No naked flame sources, such as lighted candles, should be placed on the equipment.
- When disposing of used batteries, please comply with governmental regulations or environmental public instruction's rules that apply in your country or area.
- Make a space of about 0.2 meter around the unit.
- No objects filled with liquids, such as vases, shall be placed on the equipment.
- When the switch is in the OFF position, the equipment is not completely switched off from MAINS.
- The equipment shall be installed near the power supply so that the power supply is easily accessible.
- Do Not Touch Hot Spots During and Immediately After Use.
- During and immediately after use, this product is hot in areas other than the controls and rear panel connection jacks. Do not touch hot spots and especially the top panel. Contact with hot areas can cause burns.

#### Français

#### **AVERTISSEMENTS**

- Ne pas exposer l'appareil à la pluie ni à l'humidité.
- Ne pas essayer de retirer le boîtier de l'appareil.
- Ne rien insérer dans l'appareil par les orifices de ventilation.
- Ne pas manipuler le cordon d'alimentation avec les mains mouillées.
- Ne pas recouvrir les ouïes de ventilation avec un objet quelconque comme une nappe, un journal, un rideau, etc.
- Ne placer aucune source de flamme nue, comme une bougie allumée, sur l'appareil.
- Pour mettre au rebut les piles usées, respecter les lois gouvernementales ou les règlements officiels concernant l'environnement qui s'appliquent à votre pays ou région.
- Veiller à ce qu'aucun objet ne soit à moins de 0,2 mètre des côtés de l'appareil.

- Aucun objet rempli de liquide, un vase par exemple, ne doit être placé sur l'appareil.
- Lorsque l'interrupteur est sur la position OFF, l'appareil n'est pas complètement déconnecté du SECTEUR (MAINS).
- L'appareil sera installé près de la source d'alimentation, de sorte que cette dernière soit facilement accessible.
- Ne pas toucher aux zones chaudes pendant et immédiatement après l'utilisation.
- Pendant l'utilisation et immediatement apres, cet appareil est chaud en dehors des commandes et des prises de raccordement arriere. Ne pas toucher aux zones chaudes, et particulièrement au panneau supérieur, pour éviter tout risque de brûlure.

#### Deutsch

#### WARNHINWEISE

- Das Gerät nicht Regen oder Feuchtigkeit aussetzen.
- Die Abdeckung nicht vom Gerät abnehmen.
- Keine Gegenstände durch die Belüftungsschlitze stecken.
- Das Netzkabel nicht mit feuchten oder nassen Händen anfassen.
- Decken Sie die Lüftungsöffnungen nicht mit einem Tischtuch, einer Zeitung, einem Vorhang usw. ab.
- Es dürfen keine Gegenstände mit offener Flamme, wie etwa brennende Kerzen, auf dem Gerät aufgestellt werden.
- Beachten Sie bei der Entsorgung der verbrauchten Batterien alle geltenden lokalen und überregionalen Regelungen.
- Auf allen Geräteseiten muß ein Zwischenraum von ungefähr 0,2 meter vorhanden sein.
- Auf das Gerät dürfen keine mit Flüssigkeiten gefüllte Behälter, wie etwa eine Vase, gestellt werden.
- Wenn der Schalter ausgeschaltet ist (OFF-Position), ist das Gerät nicht vollständig vom Stromnetz (MAINS) abgetrennt.
- Das Gerät sollte in der Nähe einer Netzsteckdose aufgestellt werden, damit es leicht an das Stromnetz angeschlossen werden kann.
- Berühren Sie während oder unmittelbar nach dem Gebrauch keine heißen Stellen des Gerätes.
- Während oder unmittelbar nach dem Gebrauch ist dieses Produkt mit Ausnahme der Bedienelemente und der Anschlussbuchsen auf der Rückseite heiß. Berühren Sie die heißen Stellen und insbesondere die Oberseite nicht. Der Kontakt mit heißen Flächen kann zu Verbrennungen führen.

#### Nederlands

#### WAARSCHUWINGEN

- Stel het apparaat niet bloot aan regen of vocht.
- Verwijder de afdekplaat van het apparaat niet.
- Duw niets door de ventilatieopeningen in het apparaat.
- Raak het netsnoer niet met natte handen aan.
- Bedek de ventilatieopeningen niet met enige voorwerpen, zoals tafelkleden, kranten, gordijnen, enz
- Plaats geen brandende voorwerpen, zoals kaarsen, op het apparaat.
- Volg bij het weggooien van verbruikte batterijen de overheidswetgeving of milieuvoorschriften op die van kracht zijn in het land of de regio waarin u zich bevindt.
- Zorg dat er 0,2 meter vrije ruimte rond het toestel is.
- Plaats geen voorwerpen met een vloeistof erin, zoals een bloemenvaas, op het apparaat.
- Als de schakelaar op OFF staat, is het apparaat niet volledig losgekoppeld van de netspanning (MAINS).
- De apparatuur wordt in de buurt van het stopcontact ge installeerd, zodat dit altijd gemakkelijk toegankelijk is.
- Raak hete gedeelten van het apparaat niet aan tijdens en onmiddellijk na het gebruik.
- Tijdens en onmiddellijk na het gebruik is dit product heet, behalve in de omgeving van de bedieningstoetsen en de aansluitingen op het achterpaneel. Raak geen hete plekken aan, vooral niet het bovenpaneel. Contact met hete plekken kan brandwonden veroorzaken.

#### Español

#### **ADVERTENCIAS**

- No exponga el equipo a la lluvia ni a la humedad.
- No extraiga la tapa del equipo.
- No introduzca nada en el interior del equipo a través de los orificios de ventilación.
- No maneje el cable de alimentación con las manos mojadas.
- No cubra la ventilación con objetos como manteles, periódicos, cortinas, etc.
- No deben colocarse sobre el equipo elementos con fuego, por ejemplo velas encendidas.
- Cuando se eliminen baterías usadas, deben cumplirse las reglamentaciones oficiales o las normas de protección medioambiental aplicables en su país o en su zona.
- Deje un espacio de unos 0,2 metro alrededor de la unidad.

- No se deben colocar sobre el aparato recipientes que contengan líquidos, como por ejemplo jarrones.
- Cuando el interruptor está en la posición OFF, el equipo no está completamente desconectado de la alimentación MAINS.
- El equipo se instalará cerca de la fuente de alimentación de manera que resulte fácil acceder a ella.
- No tocar las áreas calientes mientras la unidad está en uso ni inmediatamente después.
- Mientras esta en funcionamiento e inmediatamente despues de su uso, este producto presenta zonas calientes en diversas partes, no exclusivamente en el sector de los controles o en las conexiones del panel posterior. No tocar las áreas calientes, especialmente el panel superior dado que pueden producirse quemaduras.

#### Italiano

#### **AVVERTENZE**

- Non esporre l'apparecchio alla pioggia o all'umidità.
- Non rimuovere il coperchio dell'apparecchio.
- Non introdurre oggetti all'interno dell'apparecchio attraverso i fori di ventilazione.
- Non toccare il cavo di alimentazione con le mani bagnate.
- Non coprire le fessure di ventilazione con tovaglie, giornali, tende od oggetti analoghi.
- Non posare sull'apparecchio sorgenti di fiamme scoperte quali candele accese.
- Smaltire le pile usate in conformità alle norme governative o disposizioni ambientali vigenti nel proprio paese o zona.
- Lasciare 0,2 metro liberi tutto intorno l'unità.
- Non mettere sull'apparecchiatura alcun contenitore di liquido, come ad esempio dei vasi.
- Quando l'interruttore è nella posizione OFF, l'apparecchiatura non è completamente scollegata da MAINS.
- L'apparecchio va installato in prossimità della fonte di alimentazione, in modo che quest'ultima sia facilmente accessibile.
- Non toccare i punti caldi né durante, né immediatamente dopo l'uso.
- Durante, e subito dopo l'utilizzo, questo prodotto risulta essere molto caldo in alcune sue parti come ad esempio i connettori del pannello posteriore. Non toccare i punti caldi e specialmente la superficie del pannello. Il contatto con parti calde può provocare ustioni.

#### Svenska

#### VARNINGAR

- Utsätt inte utrustningen för regn eller fukt.
- Ta inte bort utrustningens hölje.
- För inte in föremål i utrustningen genom ventilationshålen.
- Hantera inte nätsladden med våta händer.
- Täck inte för ventilationsöppningarna med några föremål som till exempel bordsdukar, dagstidningar, gardiner e.d.
- Inga föremål med öppen låga, som till exempel tända stearinljus, bör placeras på utrustningen.
- Följ de lagar och miljöskyddsråd som gäller i det land eller område där du bor när du gör dig av med batterier.
- Se till att det finns omkring 0,2 meter fri plats runt omkring enheten.
- Inga objekt som är fyllda med någon vätska, till exempel blomstervaser, bör placeras på apparaten.
- Även om strömbrytaren står i det avstängda läget OFF, så är utrustningen inte helt bortkopplad från det elektriska nätet (MAINS).
- Utrustningen ska vara installerad nära strömuttaget så att strömförsörjningen är lätt att tillgå.
- Vidrör inte varma punkter under och omedelbart efter användning.
- Bortsett från kontrollerna och anslutningsuttagen på baksidan är den här produkten varm under och omedelbart efter användning. Vidrör inte varma punkter och särskilt inte ovansidan. Kontakt med varma ytor kan orsaka brännskador.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

FOREWORD	2
EQUIPMENT MAINS WORKING SETTING	2
COPYRIGHT	2
INTRODUCTION	2
A NOTE ABOUT RECYCLING	2
DESCRIPTION	2
FEATURES	5
ACCESSORIES	5
FRONT PANEL	6
FL DISPLAY AND INDICATER	7
REAR PANEL	8
REMOTE CONTROLLER RC8001	ISR9
NAMES AND FUNCTIONS	9
LCD INDICATORS	10
REMOTE CONTROL RANGE	11
LOADING BATTERIES	11
BATTERY REPLACEMENT INTERVAL	
SETTING THE TIME	11
GENERAL INFORMATION OF	
RC8001SR TO SR7001	12
CONNECTIONS	13
SPEAKER PLACEMENT	13
CONNECTING SPEAKERS	13
CONNECTING AUDIO COMPONENTS	14
CONNECTING VIDEO COMPONENTS	16
ADVANCED CONNECTING	
CONNECTING THE REMOTE CONTROL JAC	KS17
CONNECTING THE ANTENNA TERMINALS	
CONNECTING FOR THE MULTI ROOM	
CONNECTING OTHER EQUIPMENT	20
SETUP	
ONSCREEN DISPLAY MENU SYSTEM	21
1 INPUT SETUP	
2 SPKR (SPEAKER) SETUP	
3 SURROUND SETUP	32

4 VIDEO SETUP	34
5 PREFERENCE	
6 ACOUSTIC EQ	37
BASIC OPERATION (PLAY BACK)	39
SELECTING AN INPUT SOURCE	
SELECTING THE SURROUND MODE	
ADJUSTING THE MAIN VOLUME	
NIGHT MODE	39
ADJUSTING THE TONE (BASS & TREBLE)	
CONTROL	
DIALOGUE NORMALIZATION MESSAGE	
VIDEO CONVERT I/P CONVERT	
TEMPORARILY TURNING OFF THE SOUND	
USING THE SLEEP TIMER	
SURROUND MODE	
SOURCE DIRECT	
PURE DIRECT	
OTHER FUNCTION	
TV AUTO ON/OFF FUNCTION	
ATTENUATION TO ANALOG INPUT SIGNAL	
LISTENING THROUGH HEADPHONES	
DOLBY HEADPHONE MODE	
VIDEO ON/OFF	
SELECTING ANALOG AUDIO INPUT OR	
DIGITAL AUDIO INPUT	46
RECORDING AN ANALOG SOURCE	46
DISPLAY MODE	46
SPEAKER A/B	47
7.1 CH INPUT	47
AUX2 INPUT	47
LIP.SYNC	47
BASIC OPERATION (TUNER)	48
LISTENING TO THE TUNER	48
PRESET MEMORY	49
RDS OPERATION	51

MULTI ROOM SYSTEM	52
MULTI ROOM PLAYBACK USING THE MULTI ROOM	
OUT TERMINALS	.52
MULTI ROOM PLAYBACK USING THE	
MULTI SPEAKER TERMINALS	.52
OPERATION OF THE MULTI ROOM OUTPUTS WITH	
THE REMOTE CONTROL FROM MULTI A	.53
REMOTE CONTROLLER	
OPERATION	54
CONTROLLING MARANTZ COMPONENTS	.54
BASIC OPERATION	.56
PROGRAMMING MACROS	.59
CLONE MODE	.61
SETUP	.62
TROUBLESHOOTING	63
HDMI	.64
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS	65
DIMENSIONS	65
SETUP CODES	1
DIRECT BUTTON FUNCTIONS	
	* 1

# **FOREWORD**

This section must be read before any connection is made to the mains supply.

#### **EQUIPMENT MAINS WORKING SETTING**

Your Marantz product has been prepared to comply with the household power and safety requirements that exist in your area.

SR7001/SR8001 can be powered by 230V AC only.

#### COPYRIGHT

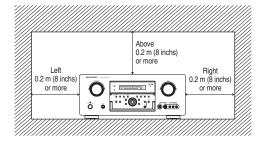
Recording and playback of any material may require consent. For further information refer to the following:

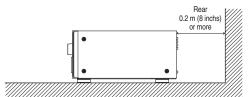
- Copyright Act 1956
- Dramatic and Musical Performers Act 1958
- Performers Protection Acts 1963 and 1972
- Any subsequent statutory enactments and orders

#### **CAUTIONS ON INSTALLATION**

For heat dispersal, leave at least 0.2 m/8 inch of space between the top, back and sides of this unit and the wall or other components.

Do not obstruct the ventilation holes.





# INTRODUCTION

Thank you for purchasing the Marantz SR7001/ SR8001 Surround receiver.

This remarkable component has been engineered to provide you with many years of home theater enjoyment. Please take a few minutes to read this manual thoroughly before you connect and operate the SR7001/SR8001.

As there are a number of connection and configuration options, you are encouraged to discuss your own particular home theater setup with your Marantz A/V specialist dealer.

This user guide covers the SR7001 and SR8001, though the SR7001 is given for the title. Explanations of features belonging only to the SR8001 are indicated as "SR8001 only".

# A NOTE ABOUT RECYCLING



This product's packaging materials are recyclable and can be reused. This product and the accessories packed together are the applicable product to the WEEE directive except batteries.

Please dispose of any materials in accordance with your local recycling regulations.

When discarding the unit, comply with your local rules or regulations.

Batteries should never be thrown away or incinerated but disposed of in accordance with your local regulations concerning chemical wastes.

# DESCRIPTION



THX® is an exclusive set of standards and technologies established by the world-renowned film production company, Lucasfilm Ltd. THX resulted from George Lucas' desire to reproduce the movie soundtrack as faithfully as possible both in the movie theater and in the home theater.

THX engineers developed patented technologies to accurately translate the sound from a movie theater environment into the home, correcting the tonal and spatial errors that occur.

When the THX mode of the SR7001 is on, three distinct THX technologies are automatically added: Re-Equalization-restores the correct tonal balance for watching a movie in a home environment.

These sounds are otherwise mixed to be brighter for a large movie theater. Re-EQ compensates for this and prevents the soundtracks from being overly bright and harsh when played in a home theater.

Timbre Matching-filters the information going to the surround speakers so they more closely match the tonal characteristics of the sound coming from the front speakers.

This ensures seamless panning between the front and surround speakers.

Adaptive Decorrelation-slightly changes one surround channel's time and phase relationship with respect to the other surround channel.

This expands the listening position and creates with only two surround speakers the same spacious surround experience as in a movie theater with multiple surround speakers.

The Marantz SR7001 was required to pass a rigorous series of quality and performance tests, in addition to incorporating the technologies explained above, in order to be THX certified by Lucasfilm Ltd.

THX requirements cover every aspect of performance including pre-amplifier and power amplifier performance and operation, and hundreds of other parameters in both the digital and analog domain. Movies which have been encoded in Dolby Digital, DTS, Dolby Pro Logic, stereo and Mono will all benefit from the THX mode when being viewed. The THX mode should only be activated when

The THX mode should only be activated when watching movies which were originally produced for a movie theater environment.

THX need not be activated for music, movies made especially for TV, or shows such as sports programming, talk shows, etc.

This is because they were originally mixed for a small room environment.

THX and Select 2 are trademarks of THX Ltd. THX may be registered in some jurisdictions. Surround EX is a trademark of Dolby Laboratories. Used with permission.

# THX SURROUND EX

THX Surround EX—Dolby Digital Surround EX is a joint development of Dolby Laboratories and THX Ltd.

In a movie theater, film soundtracks that have been encoded with Dolby Digital Surround EX technology are able to reproduce an extra channel which has been added during the mixing of the program. This channel, called Surround Back, places sounds behind the listener in addition to the currently available front left, front center, front right, surround right, surround left and subwoofer channels. This additional channel provides the opportunity for more detailed imaging behind the listener and brings more depth, spacious ambience and sound localization than ever before.

Movies that were created using the Dolby Digital Surround EX technology, when released into the home consumer market may exhibit wording to that effect on the packaging. A list of movies created using this technology can be found on the Dolby web site at **www.dolby.com**. A list of available DVD software titles encoded with this technology an be found at www.thx.com.

Only receiver and controller products bearing the THX Surround EX logo, when in the THX Surround EX mode, faithfully reproduce this new technology in the home. This product may also engage the THX Surround EX mode during the playback of 5.1 channel material that is not Dolby Digital Surround EX eocnded. In such case, the information delivered to the Surround Back channel will be program dependent and may or may not be very pleasing depending on the particular soundtrack and the tastes of the individual listener.

"SURROUND EXTM" is a trademark of Dolby Laboratories. Used under authorization.

#### THX Select2

Before any home theater component can be THX Select2 certified, it must pass a rigorous series of quality and performance tests. Only then can a product feature the THX Select2 logo, which is your guarantee that the Home Theater products you purchase will give you superb performance for many years to come. THX Select2 requirements define hundreds of parameters, including power amplifier performance, and pre-amplifier performance and operation for both digital and analog domains. THX Select2 receivers also feature proprietary THX technologies

(e.g., THX Mode) which accurately translate movie soundtracks for home theater playback.



DTS was introduced in 1994 to provide 5.1 channels of discrete digital audio into home theater systems. DTS brings you premium quality discrete multichannel digital sound to both movies and music.

DTS is a multichannel sound system designed to create full range digital sound reproduction.

The no compromise DTS digital process sets the standard of quality for cinema sound by delivering an exact copy of the studio master recordings to neighborhood and home theaters.

Now, every moviegoer can hear the sound exactly as the moviemaker intended.

DTS can be enjoyed in the home for either movies or music on of DVD's, LD's, and CD's.

"DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.



The advantages of discrete multichannel systems over matrix are well known.

But even in homes equipped for discrete multichannel, there remains a need for high-quality matrix decoding. This is because of the large library of matrix surround motion pictures available on disc and on VHS tape; and analog television broadcasts.

The typical matrix decoder of today derives a center channel and a mono surround channel from two-channel matrix stereo material. It is better than a simple matrix in that it includes steering logic to improve separation, but because of its mono, band-limited surround it can be disappointing to users accustomed to discrete multichannel.

Neo:6 offers several important improvements as follow.

- Neo:6 provides up to six full-band channels of matrix decoding from stereo matrix material. Users with 6.1 and 5.1 systems will derive six and five separate channels, respectively, corresponding to the standard home-theater speaker layouts.
- Neo:6 technology allows various sound elements within a channel or channels to be steered separately, and in a way which follows naturally from the original presentation.
- Neo:6 offers a music mode to expand stereo nonmatrix recordings into the five- or six-channel layout, in a way which does not diminish the subtlety and integrity of the original stereo recording.



DTS-ES Extended Surround is a new multichannel digital signal format developed by Digital Theater Systems Inc. While offering high compatibility with the conventional DTS Digital Surround format, DTS-ES Extended Surround greatly improves the 360-degree surround impression and space expression thanks to further expanded surround signals. This format has been used professionally in movie theaters since 1999.

In addition to the 5.1 surround channels (FL, FR, C, SL, SR and LFE), DTS-ES Extended Surround also offers the SB (Surround Back) channel for surround playback with a total of 6.1 channels. DTS-ES Extended Surround includes two signal formats with different surround signal recording methods, as DTS-ES Discrete 6.1 and DTS-ES Matrix 6.1.

"DTS", "DTS-ES and "Neo:6" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.



The stereo CD is a 16-bit medium with sampling at 44.1 kHz. Professional audio has been 20- or 24-bit for some time, and there is increasing interest in higher sampling rates both for recording and for delivery into the home. Greater bit depths provide extended dynamic range. Higher sampling rates allow wider frequency response and the use of antialias and reconstruction filters with more favorable aural characteristics.

DTS 96/24 allows for 5.1channel sound tracks to be encoded at a rate of 96kHz/24bits on DVD-Video titles

When DVD-video appeared, it became possible to deliver 24-bit, 96 kHz audio into the home, but only in two channels, and with serious limitations on picture. This capability has had little use.

DVD-audio allows 96/24 in six channels, but a new player is needed, and only analog outputs are provided, necessitating the use of the D/A converters and analog electronics provided in the player.

DTS 96/24 offers the following:

- Sound quality transparent to the original 96/24 master.
- Full backward compatibility with all existing decoders. (Existing decoders will output a 48 kHz signal)
- No new player required: DTS 96/24 can be carried on DVD-video, or in the video zone of DVD-audio, accessible to all DVD players.
- 96/24 5.1-channel sound with full-quality fullmotion video, for music programs and motion picture soundtracks on DVD-video.

"DTS" and "DTS 96/24" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

# DOLBY DIGITAL • EX PRO LOGIC IIX

Dolby Digital identifies the use of Dolby Digital audio coding for such consumer formats as DVD and DTV. As with film sound, Dolby Digital can provide up to five full-range channels for left, center, and right screen channels, independent left and right surround channels, and a sixth (".1") channel for low-frequency effects.

Dolby Surround Pro Logic II is an improved matrix decoding technology that provides better spatiality and directionality on Dolby Surround program material; provides a convincing three-dimensional soundfield on conventional stereo music recordings; and is ideally suited to bring the surround experience to automotive sound. While conventional surround programming is fully compatible with Dolby Surround Pro Logic II decoders, soundtracks will be able to be encoded specifically to take full advantage of Pro Logic II playback, including separate left and right surround channels. (Such material is also compatible with conventional Pro Logic decoders.)

Dolby Digital EX creates six full-bandwidth output channels from 5.1-channel sources. This is done using a matrix decoder that derives three surround channels from the two in the original recording. For best results, Dolby Digital EX should be used with movies soundtracks recorded with Dolby Digital Surround EX.

# About Dolby Pro Logic II x

Dolby Pro Logic IIx technology delivers a natural and immersing 7.1-channel listening experience to the home theater environment. A product of Dolby's expertise in surround sound and matrix decoding technologies, Dolby Pro Logic IIx is a complete surround sound solution that maximizes the entertainment experience from stereo as well as 5.1-channel encoded sources.

Dolby Pro Logic IIx is fully compatible with Dolby Surround Pro Logic technology and can optimally decode the thousands of commercially available Dolby Surround encoded video cassettes and television programs with enhanced depth and spatiality. It can also process any high-quality stereo or Advanced Resolution 5.1-channel music content into a seamless 6.1- or 7.1-channel listening experience.



The Dolby Headphone technology provides a surround sound listening experience over headphones. When listening to multichannel content such as DVD movies over headphones, the listening experience is fundamentally different than listening to speakers. Since the headphone speaker drivers are covering the pinna of the ear, the listening experience differs greatly from traditional speaker playback. Dolby utilizes patented headphone perspective curves to solve this problem and provides a non-fatiguing, immersive, home theater listening experience. Dolby Headphone also delivers exceptional 3D audio from stereo material.

# **DOLBY**VIRTUAL SPEAKER

Dolby Virtual Speaker is a technologycertified by Dolby Laboratories that creates a virtualized surround sound experience from two speakers using a multichannel Dolby Digital source. Additionally, Dolby Virtual Speaker can simulate the surround sound effect produced by Dolby Pro Logic or Dolby Pro Logic II.

Dolby Virtual Speaker retains all the original Multichannel audio information and provides the listener with the sensation of being surrounded by additional speakers.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby", "Pro Logic", "Surround EX", and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



Circle Surround II (CS-II) is a powerful and versatile multichannel technology. CS-II is designed to enable up to 6.1 multichannel surround sound playback from mono, stereo, CS encoded sources and other matrix encoded sources. In all cases the decoder extends it into 6 channels of surround audio and a LFE/subwoofer signal. The CS-II decoder creates a listening environment that places the listener "inside" music performances and dramatically improves both hi-fi audio conventional surround-encoded video material. CS-II provides composite stereo rear channels to greatly improve separation and image positioning— adding a heightened sense of realism to both audio and A/V productions.

CS-II is packed with other useful feature like dialog clarity (SRS Dialog) for movies and cinema-like bass enrichment (TruBass). CS-II can enable the dialog to become clearer and more discernable in movies and it enables the bass frequencies contained in the original programming to more closely achieve low frequencies—overcoming the low frequency limitations of the speakers by full octave.

Circle Surround II, Dialog Clarity, TruBass, SRS and symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc. Circle Surround II, Dialog Clarity and TruBass technology are incorporated under license from SRS Labs, Inc.



HDCD® (High Definition Compatible Digital ®) is a patented process for delivering on Compact Disc the full richness and details of the original microphone feed.

HDCD encoded CDs sound better because they are encoded with 20-bits of real musical information as compared to 16-bits for all other CDs.

HDCD overcomes the limitation of the 16-bit CD format by using a sophisticated system to encode the additional four bits onto the CD while remaining completely compatible with the CD format.

When listening to HDCD recordings, you hear more dynamic range, a focused 3-D sound stage, and extremely natural vocal and musical timbre. With HDCD, you get the body, depth and emotion of the original performance not a flat, digital imitation.

HDCD system manufactured under license from Microsoft. This product is covered by one or more of the following: In the United States 5,479,168 5,638,074 5,640,161 5,808,574 5,838,274 5,854,600 5,864,311 5,872,531 and in Australia 669,114 with other patents pending.



HDMI, the **HDMI** and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.



There are several factors that can degrade the sound from even the best loudspeakers in a listening room. One of the most important is the interaction of sound from the loudspeakers with large surfaces such as walls, the floor, and the ceiling in the room. Even with careful loudspeaker placement and acoustical treatments, there are significant problems that are caused by room acoustics. These include reflections from nearby surfaces and standing waves that are created between large parallel surfaces in the room. In a home theater the situation is further complicated because there are several listening locations. The effects of room acoustics on the sound arriving at each person's ears are very different and the result is a listening experience that is degraded in a different way for every person in the room. It is not uncommon to have variations in two adjacent seats that are as large as 10 dB, particularly in the frequency range below 250 Hz.

The solution to this problem is to apply room correction after precisely measuring how each loudspeaker interacts with the room. Because the room causes variations in the frequency response of the loudspeakers that are so large from seat to seat, it is important to measure each loudspeaker at several locations in the listening room. This should be done even if there is only one listener. Measurement at a single location is not representative of the acoustical problems in the room and will in most cases, degrade overall performance. Audyssey MultEQ is the only technology that can achieve room correction for multiple listeners in a large listening area. It does so by combining the data collected at several points in the room from each loudspeaker and then applying correction that minimizes the acoustical effects of the room and is matched to the frequency resolution of human perception (known as psychoacoustics). Furthermore, MultEQ correction is applied both in frequency and time domains and so there are no artifacts (such as smearing of sound or modal ringing)that are sometimes associated with traditional methods of room equalization.

In addition to correcting frequency response problems over a wide listening area, Audyssey MultEQ provides a completely automated sound system setup process. It identifies how many loudspeakers are connected to the amplifiers and whether they are full-range, satellites, or subwoofers. If there is a least one subwoofer connected, Audyssey MultEQ determines the optimum crossover frequency between each satellite and the subwoofer(s). It automatically checks the polarity of each loudspeaker and alerts the user if there are any that may be wired out-

of-phase relative to the others. It measures the distance to each loudspeaker from the main listening position and adjusts the delays so that sound from each loudspeaker arrives at the same time. Finally, Audyssey MuitEQ determines the playback level of each loudspeaker and adjusts the volume trims so that all levels are equal.



MultEQ and the Audyssey MultEQ logo are trademarks of Audyssey Laboratories, Inc. All rights reserved.

# FEATURES

The SR7001 incorporates the latest generation of digital surround sound decoding technology such as Dolby Digital EX, Dolby Digital, DTS ES (Discrete 6.1 and Matrix 6.1), DTS Neo:6 (Cinema, Music), Dolby Pro-Logic II (Movie, Music and Game), Dolby Pro-Logic IIx (Movie, Music and Game), Circle Surround II (Cinema, Music and Mono).

In addition, Marantz has focused on the future. By utilizing pre-out jacks, 7.1 direct inputs and a RS-232C communication port, the SR7001 is tomorrow's technology, today!

#### • THX Select 2 certified

7ch amplifiers have enough power for even the most difficult conditions found in large rooms.

Enormous power reserves endow the system with substantial dynamic ability at high sound levels.

110 watts (SR7001) / 125 watts (SR8001) to each of the 7 main channels the power amp section features an advanced, premium high-storage power supply capacitors, and fully discrete output stages housed in cast aluminum heat sinks.

The SR7001 incorporates the most advanced Digital Signal Processing circuitry, along with a Crystal® 192 kHz/24 bit D/A converter in each of the 7 channels. Independent power supply circuits are incorporated for the FL display, audio and video sections for maximum separation, clarity and dynamic range. Together with hand-selected customized components, all elements work in harmony to recreate the emotion, exactly as the artist had intended.

The SR7001 is designed and engineered with extensive feedback from custom installation experts. dealers and consumers. It features multi-room/ multisource, assignable DC trigger, a RS-232C communication port, Flasher input, heavy duty speaker binding posts and an extensive array of both analog and digital inputs / outputs. With 6 assignable digital inputs (7 total), 4 component inputs, Super Audio CD Multi Channel (7.1 channel) direct inputs, video convert system and a speaker-B and OSD output versatility is taken to a stunning new level. Furthermore, the SR7001 can output the OSD information through the Y/C (S-video) and composite video outputs.

An easy-to-use programmable, learning remote control allows full access to all of the operating functions and can be used for system operation as well.

The new generation of Marantz Receivers is stylish and completely symmetrical. On the front panel of the SR7001, buttons are kept to a minimum. Source selectors and volume controls are intuitively placed. The SR7001 is here to perform in your unrivaled home entertainment setup.

#### · HDMI

HDMI (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) is an enhancement to the DVI (Digital Visual Interface) standard. It adds capabilities for digitally transmitting audio signals in addition to video signals. Where multiple cables were previously needed for audio/ video, HDMI enables audio/video connection via a single cable.

The HDMI input jacks of this receiver support HDMI Ver. 1.2. and the HDMI output jacks of this transmitter support HDMI Ver. 1.1.

Ver. 1.2 supports 1-bit audio formatting and enables transmission of DSD (Direct Stream Digital) signals of Super Audio CD.

#### Copyright Protection

This receiver supports HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection). HDCP is copyright protection technology that consists of data encoding and other device authentication. Its purpose is to protect digital video content. Both this receiver and the connected component (such as a video player or monitor) must support HDCP. Before connecting a component to this receiver, refer to its instruction manual.

- THX / THX Surround EX
- · Dolby Digital EX. Dolby Digital, DTS ES (Discrete 6.1, Matrix 6.1, Neo:6)
- Dolby Pro Logic II (Movie, Music, Game)
- Dolby Pro Logic IIx (Movie, Music, Game)
- Circle Surround II (Cinema, Music, Mono)
- Audyssey Mult EQ
- 7 x 110 Watts (8 Ohms). Discrete Amplifiers (SR8001: 7 × 125 Watts)
- High Power Current Feedback Circuitry
- · Massive Energy Power Supply, Huge El Transformer, Large ELCO's.
- 192 kHz/24 bit DAC for all 8 Channels
- 32 bit Digital Surround Processing Chipsets
- Video Off Mode
- · Large Heavy Duty Speaker Terminals for all Channels
- RS-232C Terminal for Future Upgrade or System
- · Set Up Menu via all Video Output (Composite, S-Video, Component video and HDMI)
- Auto Input Signal Detection
- Improved Station Name Input Method, 60 Presets
- Auto Adjust Function for Speaker Distance Settings (Delay Time)

- Front Optical AUX Input (Digital Camera, Portable DVD)
- Programmable, learning remote control
- · Video convert system HDMI ← Component Video ↔ S-Video 

  Composit Video
- Video I/P Converter
- · Assignable Video Input
- Lip Sync (Audio Delay)
- Function Bename
- HDCD
- · Dolby Headphone
- Bi-amp drive
- Source/Pure Direct mode
- 9 bands x 7 ch GEQ
- DSD direct conversion
- · DSD to PCM converter
- · Two component monitor outputs
- · Assignable DC Trigger Output
- Troidal Core Transformer (SR8001 only)
- Selectable Multi Room Component Video output (SR8001 only)

Õ 😇 Õ

**100000** 

0000

- Flasher Input
- IR Recever Input (SR8001 only)
- Emitter Output (SR8001 only)

Remote Controller RC8001SR

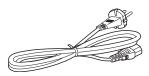
Multi Room B output (SR8001 only)

**ACCESSORIES** 

# Microphone



AC cable



AAA-size batteries × 3



AM Loop Antenna



FM Antenna



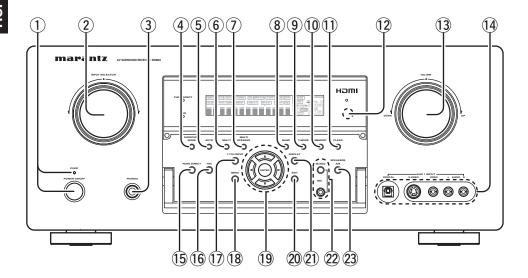
Front AUX Jack Cover



User Guide



# FRONT PANEL



# 1 POWER switch and STANDBY indicator

Press the button to turn the power ON, and press again to turn it OFF. If the **POWER** switch is in the ON position, the power of this unit can be turned ON/ OFF by pressing the **POWER** button on the remote control unit.

When this unit is in the standby mode with the **POWER** switch set to the ON position, pressing the **ENTER** button also allows to turn the power on.

The **STANDBY** indicator lights up when this unit is the standby mode (power OFF) by the remote control unit.

# 2 INPUT SELECTOR knob (AUDIO/VIDEO)

This knob is used to select the input sources. The video function selectors, such as TV, DVD, VCR1, DSS and AUX1 select video and audio simultaneously.

Audio function sources such as TAPE, CD/CDR, TUNER and AUX2 may be selected in conjunction with a Video source.

This feature (Sound Injection) combines a sound from one source with a picture from another.

Choose the video source first, and then choose a different audio source to activate this function.

# 3 HEADPHONE jack for stereo headphones

This jack may be used to listen to the SR7001's output through a pair of headphones. Be certain that the headphones have a standard 1/4" stereo phono plug. Note that the main room speakers will automatically be turned off when the headphone jack is in use.

#### Notes:

- When using headphones, the surround mode will change to STEREO and Dolby Headphone by MENU and Cursor button.
- The surround mode returns to the previous setting as soon as the headphone plug is removed from the jack.

# 4 SURROUND MODE button

You can select the surround mode by pressing this button.

# 5 AUTO (Auto surround) button

Press this button to select the AÚTO mode from the surround modes. When this mode is selected, the receiver determines the surround mode corresponding to a digital input signal automatically.

# 6 MULTI (Multi Room) button

Press this button to activate the Multiroom system. "MULTI" indicator will be illuminated in the display. (See page 52)

#### 7) MULTI SPEAKER button

Press this button to activate the Multiroom Speaker system. "MULTI" indicator will be illuminated in the display. (See page 52)

#### (8) BAND button

Press this button to switch between FM and AM in the TUNER mode.

#### 9 T-MODE button

Press this button to select the auto stereo mode or mono mode when the FM band is selected.

The "AUTO" indicator lights in the auto stereo mode. (See page 48)

### 10 MEMORY button

Press this button to enter the tuner preset memory numbers or station names. (See page 49)

#### (1) CLEAR button

Press this button to cancel the station-memory setting mode or preset scan tuning. (See page 50)

# 12 INFRARED receiving sensor window

This window receives infrared signals for the remote control.

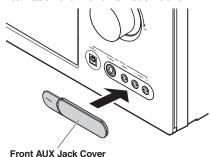
#### 13 VOLUME control knob

Adjusts the overall sound level. Turning the control clockwise increases the sound level.

# **14** AUX1 INPUT jacks

These auxiliary video/audio input jacks accept the connections of a camcorder, portable DVD, game etc. When not using these jacks, protect with the included jack covers.

#### How to Attach the Front AUX Jack Cover



### **DESCRIPTION** PURE DIRECT button and indicator

When this button is pressed once, "SOURCE DIRECT" appears on the FL display. If pressed again, "PURE DIRECT" appears. After 2 seconds, the FL display indication goes out.

In the source/pure direct mode, the tone control circuitry and bass management are bypassed.

#### Notes:

- The surround mode is automatically switched to AUTO when the pure direct function is turned on.
- Additionally, speaker configurations are fixed automatically as follows.

Front ŠPKR = LARGE Center SPKR = LARGE Surround SPKR = LARGE Surround Back SPKR = LARGE Sub woofer = YES

#### 16 THX button

Press this button to select THX processing for input source.

#### 17 7.1CH INPUT button

Press this button to select the output of an external multichannel player.

# 18 MENU button

This button is used to enter the SETUP MAIN MENU.

# (19) Cursor (▲, ▼, ◄, ►) / ENTER button

Use these buttons when operating the SETUP MAIN MENU and TUNER function.

#### 20 EXIT button

This button is used to exit from the SETUP MAIN MENU.

# 21 DISPLAY button

When this button is pressed, the FL display mode is changed as Input display → Surround Mode → Auto-display Off → Display Off → Function name display and the display off indicator (**DISP**) lights up is condition DISPLAY OFF.

# 2 MultEQ button / MIC jack

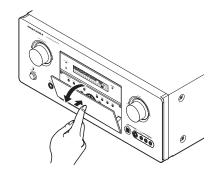
Press to automatically measure speaker characteristics using the included microphone. (See page 27)

#### 23 SPEAKER A/B button

Press this button to select speaker systems A and/or R

#### Opening and closing the front panel door

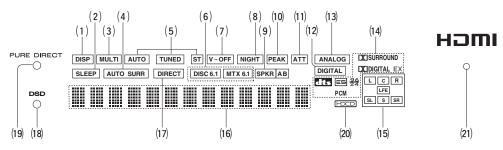
When you want to use the controls behind the front panel door, open the door by gently pressing on the lower part of the panel. Keep the door closed when not using these controls.



#### Caution:

• Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the door and the panel.

#### **FL DISPLAY AND INDICATER**



# (1) DISP (Display Off) indicator

This indicator is illuminated when the SR7001 is in the display off condition.

### (2) SLEEP timer indicator

This indicator is illuminated when the sleep timer function in the main-room is in use.

# (3) Multi-room system indicator

This indicator is illuminated when the multi-room system is active.

# (4) AUTO SURR

# (Auto Surround mode) indicator

This indicator is illuminated to show that the AUTO SURROUND mode is in use.

#### (5) TUNER's indicators

**AUTO**: This indicator illuminates when the tuner's Auto mode is in use.

**TUNED**: This indicator illuminates when a station is being received with sufficient signal strength to provide

acceptable listening quality.

ST(Stereo): This indicator illuminates when an FM station is being tuned into stereo

condition.

### (6) DTS-ES mode indicators (DISC6.1, MTX6.1)

These indicators will illuminate to show the DTS-ES decoding mode (Discrete 6.1 or Matrix 6.1).

# (7) V (video)-OFF mode indicator

This indicator is illuminated when the Video-OFF function is active.

# (8) NIGHT mode indicator

This indicator is illuminated when the SR7001 is in the Night mode, which reduces the dynamic range of digital program material at low volume levels.

# (9) SPKR (speaker) AB indicator

Active speaker system will be illuminated by this indicator.

#### (10) **PEAK indicator**

This indicator is a monitor for an analog audio input signal. If the selected analog audio input signal is greater than the capable level of internal processing, this will illuminate. If this happens, you should press the **ATT** button on the remote. (See page 9)

# (11) ATT (Attenuation) indicator

This indicator is illuminated when the attenuation function is active.

# (12) **DIGITAL Input Indicator**

This indicator lights when a digital input has been selected.

# (13) ANALOG input indicator

This indicator is illuminated when an analog input source has been selected.

# (14) SIGNAL FORMAT indicators

This indicator is illuminated when a Dolby Digital signal is input.

EX

This indicator is illuminated when a Dolby Digital EX signal is input.

#### dts

This indicator is illuminated when a DTS signal is input.

#### ES

This indicator is illuminated when a DTS ES signal is input.

#### 96/24

This indicator is illuminated when a DTS 96/24 signal is input.

#### PCM

This indicator is illuminated when the input signal is PCM (pulse code modulation).

#### DI SURROUND

This indicator is illuminated when a Dolby Surround signal is input.

#### 15) ENCODED CHANNEL STATUS indicators

These indicators display the channels that are encoded with a digital

input signal. If the selected digital input signal is Dolby Digital 5.1ch or DTS 5.1ch, "L", "C", "R", "SL", "SR" and "LFE" will be illuminated. If the digital input signal is 2 channel PCM-audio, "L" and "R" will be displayed.

If Dolby Digital 5.1ch signal with Surround EX flag or DTS-ES signal comes in, "L", "C", "R", "SL", "SR" and "LFE" will be illuminated.

#### (16) Main Information Display

This display shows messages relating to the status, input source, surround mode, tuner, volume level or other aspects of unit's operation.

#### (17) SOURCE DIRECT indicator

This indicator is illuminated when the SR7001 is in the SOURCE DIRECT mode.

#### (18) **DSD indicator**

This indicator illuminates when a DSD (Direct Stream Digital) signal of an Super Audio CD is input via the audio signal included in the HDMI input signal.

#### (19) PURE DIRECT indicator

This indicator is illuminated when the SR7001 is in the PURE DIRECT mode.

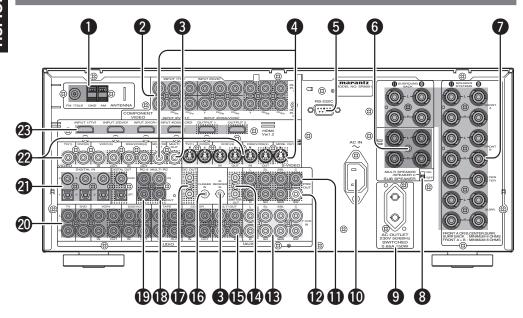
#### (20) HDCD indicator

When HDCD signal is decoded, this indicator will light up.

#### 21) HDMI indicator

This indicator illuminates when an HDMI device is connected to the input and a link is established.

# REAR PANEL



# FM antenna terminal (75 ohms)

Connect an external FM antenna with a coaxial cable, or a cable network FM source.

# AM antenna and ground terminals

Connect the supplied AM loop antenna. Use the terminals marked "AM" and "GND". The supplied AM loop antenna will provide good AM reception in most areas. Position the loop antenna until you hear the best reception.

# 2 COMPONENT VIDEO INPUT/ OUTPUT

If your DVD player or other device has component video connectors, be sure to connect them to these component video connectors on the SR7001. The SR7001 has 4 component video input connectors to obtain the color information (Y, Ce, Cn) directly from the recorded DVD signal or other video component and two component video outputs connector to output it directly into the matrix decoder of the display device.

By sending the pure DVD component video signal directly, the DVD signal forgoes the extra processing that normally would degrade the image. The result is vastly increased image quality, with incredibly life like colors and crisp detail.

# Multiroom Outputs (Audio output A/B, Video)

These are the audio and video output jacks for the Multi zone (Multi room).

Connect these jacks to optional audio power amplifiers or video display devices to listen and view the source selected by the multiroom system in a remote room.

#### MONITOR OUT

These are monitor outputs and each one includes both composite video and S-video configurations. When connecting two video monitors or televisions, be aware that the OSD interface can be used with both MONITOR OUT connections.

# **6** RS-232C

The RS-232C port is to be used in conjunction with an external controller to control the operation of the SR7001 by using an external device.

The RS-232C port may also be used in the future to update the operating software of the SR7001 so that it will be able to support new digital audio formats and the like as they are introduced.

# 6 Sub Speaker outputs terminals (MULTI SPEAKER / SPEAKER C)

Two terminals are provided for the front left, and right speakers for multi room.

The terminals can be used to connect a third set of speakers by setting the SPEAKER C selector switch to ON. For connection and use, see page 19.

# Speaker outputs terminals

Nine terminals are provided for the front (A) left, front (A) right, front (B) left, front (B) right, front center, surround left, surround right, surround back left and surround back right speakers.

#### SPEAKER C switch

Set to ON to connect a bi-amp to this receiver or set to OFF for normal speaker connection (surround back and multiroom speakers). (See page 19)

# AC OUTLETS

Connect the AC power cables of components such as a DVD and CD player to these outlets. SWITCHED and UNSWITCHED outlets are provided.

The one marked SWITCHED provides power only when the SR7001 is turned on and is useful for components which you use every time you play your system.

The one marked UNSWITCHED is always live as long as the SR7001 is plugged into a live outlet.

A component connected here may be left on permanently, or may be switched off with via its own power switch.

#### Caution:

- In order to avoid potential turn-off thumps, anything plugged into these outlets should be powered up before the SR7001 is turned on.
- The capacity of this AC outlet is 150W. Do not connect devices that consume electricity more than the capacity of these AC outlets. If the total power consumption of the connected devices exceeds the capacity, the protection circuit shuts down the power supply.

# **(1)** AC INLET

Plug the supplied power cord into this AC INLET and then into the power outlet on the wall. SR7001 can be powered by 120V AC only.

# Preamp Outputs (L, R, SL, SR, SBL, SBR, C)

Jacks for L (front left), R (front right), C (Center), SL (surround left), SR (surround right), SBL (surround back left) and SBR (surround back right).

Use these jacks for connection to external power amplifiers.

# Subwoofer Output

Connect this jack to the line level input of a powered subwoofer. If an external subwoofer amplifier is used, connect this jack to the subwoofer amplifier input. If you are using two subwoofers, either powered or with a 2 channel subwoofer amplifier, connect a "Y" connector to the subwoofer output jack and run one cable from it to each subwoofer amplifier.

#### 7.1 CHANNEL or AUX2 INPUT

By connecting a DVD Audio player, Super Audio CD multichannel player, or other components that has a multichannel port, you can playback the audio with 5.1 channel or 7.1 channel outputs.

# **(B)** EMITTER OUT (SR8001 only)

The signals input to the IR RECEIVER IN terminals are output to this terminal. External devices can be controlled by connecting them to this terminal.

# (SR8001 only)

Connect to an external IR receiver.

# **6** FLASHER IN (Flasher input terminal)

These terminals are to control the unit from each zone. Connect the control signal from a Keypad, etc.

# **D** DC TRIGGER output terminal

Connect a device that needs to be triggered by DC under certain conditions (screen, power strip, etc...) Use the system OSD setup menu to determine the conditions by which these jack will be active.

#### Note:

• This output voltage is for (status) control only, It is not sufficient for drive capability.

# MULTI ROOM REMOTE IN/OUT terminals

- IN: Connect to a multi-room remote control device, available from your Marantz dealer.
- OUT: Connect to the Marantz component equipped with remote control (RC-5) terminals in Multi zone (Multi room).

#### REMOTE CONT. IN/OUT terminals

Connect to a Marantz component equipped with remote control (RC-5) terminals.

# AUDIO IN/OUT (TV, DVD, VCR1, DSS/VCR2, TAPE, CD/CDR)

These are the analog audio inputs and outputs. There are 6 audio inputs (4 of which are linked to video inputs) and 4 audio outputs (2 of which are linked to video outputs). The audio jacks are nominally labeled for cassette tape decks, compact disc players, DVD players and etc.... The audio inputs and outputs require RCA-type connectors.

# DIGITAL INPUT (Dig.1 - 6) / OUTPUT (coaxial, optical)

These are the digital audio inputs and outputs. There are 3 digital inputs with coaxial jacks, 3 with optical iacks.

The inputs accept digital audio signals from a compact disc, LD, DVD, or other digital source component.

For digital output, there is 1 coaxial output and 1 optical output.

The digital outputs can be connected to MD recorders, CD recorders, DAT decks, or other similar components.

# VIDEO IN/OUT (TV, DVD, VCR1, DSS/ VCR2)

These are the video inputs and outputs. There are 4 video inputs and 2 video outputs and each one includes both composite video and S-video configurations. Connect VCRs, DVD players, and other video components to the video inputs.

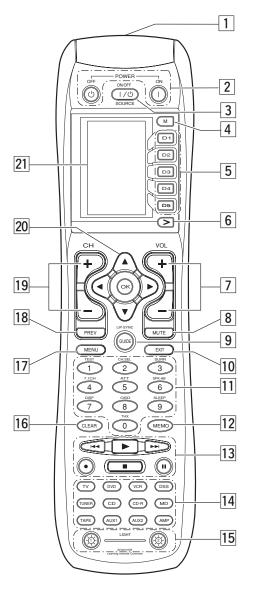
The 2 video output channels can be used to be connected to video tape recorders for making recordings.

# # HDMI INPUT / OUTPUT

This unit has 4 HDMI inputs and 1 HDMI output. The input function can be selected from the OSD menu system. (See page 15) (The SR8001 has 2 HDMI outputs.)

# REMOTE CONTROLLER RC8001SR

#### NAMES AND FUNCTIONS



# Infrared Transmitter and Learning Sensor

This transmitter emits infrared light. Press the buttons while pointing the transmitter towards the infrared receiver window of the SR7001 or other AV equipment. Be sure to also point towards other remote controls when using the learning function.

# **POWER ON and OFF buttons**

#### (When AMP mode is selected)

These buttons are used to turn the SR7001 on or off.

#### 3 SOURCE ON/OFF button

This button is used to turn a specific source (such as a DVD player) on or off independently from the rest of the system.

# 4 M (Mode) button

This button is used to program Macros. Pressing this button switches between Normal mode and Macro mode.

The > button is used to move to the next page. Up to 20 programs (4 pages) can be made. Holding down the **M** button for three seconds or more switches to the Setup mode, where the Setup menu is shown on the LCD. The Setup menu has four pages, and the > button is used to move to the next page. Pressing the > button from page 4 returns you to page 1.

# 5 D1 to D5 (Direct) buttons

Five types of direct operations can be performed for each of the 12 source buttons such as the DVD, television, amplifier, and other AV equipment. The pages can be switched, so 4 pages × 5 types = 20 operations can be performed for a single source. The text display can also be changed.

# 6 > (Page) button

This button is used to switch pages for the Direct button. The current page is shown on the LCD.

# 7 VOL (Volume) button

This button is used to adjust the volume for the amplifier and television.

#### Note:

• Set the AMP mode to use this button with the SR7001.

#### 8 MUTE button

This button is used to mute the audio for the SR7001 and television.

#### Note:

• Set the AMP mode to use this button with the SR7001.

#### 9 GUIDE button

This button is used to display the menus for the DVD player, DSS (satellite broadcasting tuner), or other AV equipment.

#### (when AMP mode is selected)

This button is used to select the LIP.SYNC mode.

#### 10 **EXIT button**

#### (when AMP mode is selected)

This button is used to cancel settings in the setup menu.

#### 11 Numeric buttons

These buttons are used to switch between 0 to 9 of the source components. If the source is set to the amplifier, these buttons are used to perform operations.

#### (when AMP mode is selected)

#### (1) TEST button

Used to enter the test tone menu.

#### (2) CH SEL. (channel select) button

Used to call up SETUP MAIN MENU and adjust speaker levels or 7.1 ch input level.

#### (3) SURR (surround) button

Used to select the surround mode.

#### (4) 7.1CH button

Press this button to select the output of an external multichannel decoder.

#### (5) ATT button

When the input signal is too high and the voice distorts even by throttling the SR7001 VOLUME control, turn on this function. "ATT" is indicated when this function is activated.

The input level is reduced. Attenuator is invalid for use with the output signal of "REC OUT".

#### Note:

• This function is unavailable during the digital input is selected.

#### (6) SPK-AB button

Speaker mode is switched in the following sequence.

 $A \rightarrow B \rightarrow A+B \rightarrow off$ 

#### (7) DISP. button

Selects the display mode for the front display of the SR7001.

## (8) OSD button

When this button is pressed, the current setting are displayed on the TV monitor.

#### (9) SLEEP (sleep timer) button

This button is used for setting the sleep timer. It can be operated the same way as the button in unit.

#### (0) THX button

Use this button to select the THX mode.

#### 12 MEMO button

This button is used to store settings to memory or program a source.

#### 13 CONTROL button

Thses buttons are used when operating the PLAY, STOP. PAUSE, and other commands of a source.

#### Note:

• This button is unavailable for the SR7001.

#### 14 SOURCE button

Thses buttons are used to switch the source of your A/V Receiver / amplifer. Each time a source button is pressed, the remote control changes to the source which was pressed.

This remote control can control 12 types of equipment. To change the A/V Receiver / amplifier source, press this button twice within two seconds. The signal is sent when it is pressed the second time.

#### Note:

- Select the AMP as the source to use this remote controll with the SR7001.
- The MD button does not work with the SR7001.

#### 15 LIGHT 1 and 2 buttons

Pressing these buttons will light up the LCD and its buttons. This lighting time can be set. If the lighting time is set to 0 seconds, the backlight turns on only while this button is pressed. The operations for LIGHT 1 and 2 are identical.

# 16 CLEAR button

This button is used to erase the memory or program of a source.

#### 7 MENU button

#### (when AMP mode is selected)

This button is used to call up the SETUP MAIN MENU of the SR7001.

# 18 PREV (Previous) button

This button is used to return to the previous channel on the television or other device.

#### Note:

• This button is unavailable for SR7001.

# 19 CH (Channel) button

This is used to change channels.

#### 20 CURSOR buttons

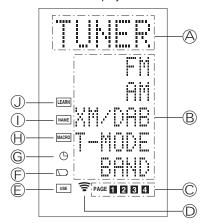
These buttons are used when controlling the cursor of the SR7001, DVD, or other AV equipment.

### 21 **LCD**

Information about the sources and modes are shown on the LCD.

# **LCD INDICATORS**

Information about currently selected source and direct code names are displayed on the LCD.



#### A Source Name indicator

This displays the name of the selected source, such as DVD, television, or other AV equipment (up to five characters).

#### B Direct Button Name indicator

This displays up to 20 types of button names for each source. (up to six characters)

# C Page indicator

This displays the current page position.

# Transmission indicator

This lights up when the remote control is sending a signal.

# USE indicator

This is displayed under normal operation.

# Battery Level indicator

This is displayed when the battery level is low.

# G TIMER indicator

This is displayed when the macro timer is set.

#### **⊞** MACRO indicator

This is displayed when the remote control is in macro programming mode.

#### ① NAME indicator

This is displayed when the remote control is in renaming mode.

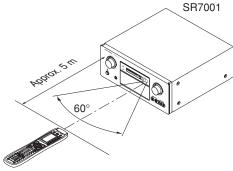
#### J LEARN indicator

This is displayed when the remote control is in learning mode.

#### REMOTE CONTROL RANGE

The distance between the transmitter of the remote control and the IR SENSOR of the SR7001 should be less than 5 meters. If the remote control is pointed in a direction other than the IR SENSOR or if there is an obstacle between them, use of the remote control may not be possible.

#### Remote-controllable range

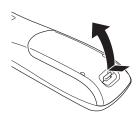


Remote control unit (RC8001SR)

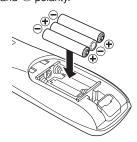
## **LOADING BATTERIES**

The life of the batteries used with the remote control is about 4 months with normal use. Also be sure to replace batteries earlier when you notice that they are getting weak.

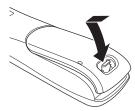
#### **1** Remove the back cover.



2. Insert the new batteries (AAA type) with correct ⊕ and ⊝ polarity.



#### Close the cover until it clicks.



#### **CAUTIONS ON BATTERIES**

- Use "AAA" type batteries in this remote control unit.
- · We recommend that you use alkali batteries.
- If the remote control unit does not operate from close to the main unit, replace the batteries with new ones, even if less then a year has passed.
- The included battery is only for verifying operation.
   Replace it with a new battery as soon as possible.
- When inserting the batteries, be careful to do so in the proper direction, following the + and - marks in the remote control unit's battery compartment.
- To prevent damage or battery fluid leakage:
- Do not use a new battery with an old one.
- Do not use two different types of batteries.
- Do not short-circuit, disassemble, heat or dispose of batteries in flames.
- Remove the batteries when not planning to use the remote control unit for a long period of time.
- If the batteries should leak, carefully wipe off the fluid from the inside of the battery compartment, then insert new batteries.
- When disposing of used batteries, please comply with governmental regulations or environmental public instruction's rules that apply in your country or area.

#### BATTERY REPLACEMENT INTERVAL

Under normal usage, alkaline batteries last approximately four months. When the batteries wear out, a battery mark is displayed on the LCD. Although the remote control can still be used when the battery mark is displayed, the batteries should be replaced as soon as possible. The LCD eventually starts to flash when buttons are pressed, the remote control will be unable to transmit signals or learn codes.

 This remote control uses non-volatile memory so that the learned codes and macro programs are retained even if the batteries are removed.

Reset the clock after replacing the batteries.

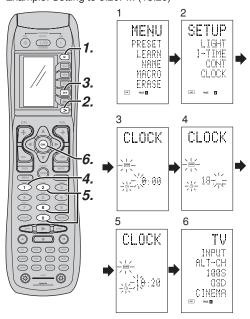
#### Safety Precautions for Batteries

Be sure to always observe the following precautions to prevent fluid leakage, overheating, fire, breakage, accidental ingestion, and other accidents.

- If the batteries are left unused for a long period of time, the battery fluid may leak or the batteries may corrode.
- Do not use the batteries in the remote control with the plus and minus polarity reversed.
- Do not attempt to recharge, heat, or disassemble the batteries. Do not put the batteries in a fire.
- Do not use the remote control with old batteries or worn-out batteries inserted.
- Do not use different types of batteries or mix old and new batteries in the remote control.
- If the remote control is not operating properly, replace the batteries with new ones.
- If any of the batteries are leaking, completely wipe up all leaked battery fluid, and then replace the batteries with new ones.

#### **SETTING THE TIME**

Example: Setting to 6:20PM (18:20)



When you bought this remote control and insert the batteries to the remote control at first, the steps 1 to 3 are skipped.

Starts from step 4 to set the time.

- Hold down the M button for three seconds or more.
  - The menu is displayed.
- Press the > button once.
   This displays second page (SETUP).
- Press the D4 (CLOCK) direct button. The ".." indicator blinks and the clock indicator displays "0:00".
- Press the 1 and 8 numeric button to set the hour indicator.

The hour indicator displays "18".

The minute indicator blinks " ".

Press the 2 and 0 numeric button to set the minute indicator.

The minute indicator displays "20".

The hour indicator blinks.

**6.** Press the **OK** cursor button to start the clock. The clock starts from 0 second at the time that was set and return to normal (USE) mode.

Whenever the batteries are replaced, the clock shows 00:00. Please reset the clock. (The time setting is not backed up.)

#### **CHECKING THE TIME**

To check the time, hold down the > button for three seconds or more. The current time is displayed for five seconds.

#### Note:

 Although the remote control uses a quartz clock, the time may become out of sync over the course of operation. Be sure to correct the clock from time to time.

# GENERAL INFORMATION OF RC8001SR TO SR7001

To control the SR7001 by your RC8001SR, you have to select the device AMP or TUNER by pressing the function selector button. Please refer below for the details in AMP and TUNER mode.

#### **AMP MODE**



SOURCE ON/OFF	Turns the SR7001 on and off
POWER ON	Turns the SR7001 on
POWER OFF	Turns the SR7001 off
D1 - D5 / >(Page)	(Refer to page vi)
VOL +/-	Adjust the over all sound level
MUTE	Decreases the sound temporarily
Cursor	Move the cursor for setting in SETUP MENU mode
OK	Enter the SETUP MENU
	Confirms the setting in SETUP MENU mode
MENU	Enter the SETUP MENU
EXIT	Exits from SETUP MENU
TEST (1)	Enter the test tone menu
CH.SEL (2)	Call up SETUP MENU and adjusts speaker levels or 7.1ch input setup
SURR (3)	Selects the surround mode
7.1CH (4)	Selects the 7.1CH IN
ATT (5)	Reduces the input level
SPK-AB (6)	Selects the speaker system
DISP (7)	Changes the front display mode
OSD (8)	Displays the current setting on the monitor
SLEEP (9)	Sets the sleep timer function
THX (0)	Selects the THX mode
Function selector	Selects a particular source component
GUIDE / LIP.SYNC	Selects the LIP.SYNC mode

# **TUNER MODE**



D1 - D5 / >(Page)	(Refer to page vi)
CH +/-	Selects a preset station up and down
GUIDE	Selects the "Frequency direct input"
0–9	Input the numeric
MEMO	Enter the tuner preset memory numbers
CLEAR	Clears the inputting
TUNER	Selects a frequency band
	,

# CONNECTIONS

#### SPEAKER PLACEMENT

The ideal surround speaker system for this unit is 7speaker systems, using front left and right speakers, a center speaker, surround left and right speakers, a surround back left and right speakers, and a subwoofer.

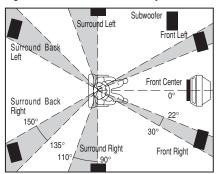
For best results we recommend that all front speakers be of the same type, with identical or similar driver units. This will deliver smooth pans across the front sound stage as the action moves from side to side.

Your center channel speaker is very important as over 80 % of the dialog from a typical motion picture emanates from the center channel.

It should possess similar sonic characteristics to the main speakers. Surround channel speakers need not be identical to the front channel speakers, but they should be of high quality.

The surround center speaker is useful for playback of Dolby Digital Surround EX or DTS-ES. One of the benefits of both Dolby Digital and DTS is that surround channels are discrete full range, while they were frequency limited in earlier "Pro Logic" type systems.

Bass effects are an important part of home theater. For optimal enjoyment a subwoofer should be used as it is optimized for low frequency reproduction. If you have full range front speakers, however, they may be used in place of a subwoofer with proper setting of the switches in the menu system.



#### Front left and right speakers

We recommend to set the front L and R speakers with 45-60 degrees from the listening position.

#### Center speaker

Align the front line of the center speaker with the front L/R speakers. Or place the center speaker a little backward from the line.

#### Surround left and right speakers

When the SR7001 is used in surround operation, the preferred location for surround speakers is on the side walls of the room, at or slightly behind the listening position.

The center of the speaker should face into the room.

#### Surround back left and right speakers

Surround back speakers are required when a full 7.1-channel system is installed.

Speakers should be placed on a rear wall, behind the listening position.

The center of the speaker should face into the room.

#### Subwoofer

We recommend using a sub-woofer to have maximum bass effect. Sub-woofer bears only low frequency range so you can place it any where in the room.

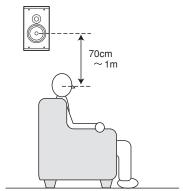
#### **HEIGHT OF THE SPEAKER UNITS**

#### Front left and right speakers, and a center speaker

Align the tweeters and mid-range drivers on the three front speakers at the same height, as best as possible.

# Surround left and right speakers, and surround back speaker

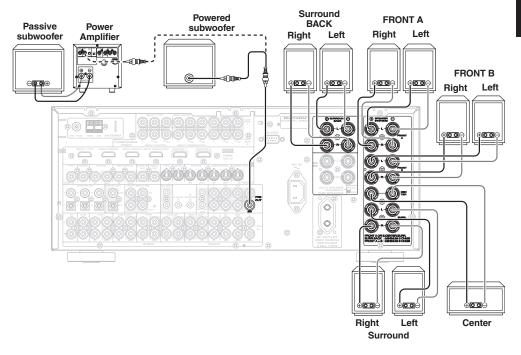
Place the surround left, right and surround back speakers higher than your ears by about 70cm–1m. Also place the speakers at the same height, as best as possible.



#### Note:

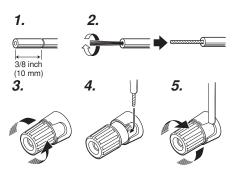
 Use magnetically-shielded speakers for front left, right and the center speakers when the speakers are installed near the TV and the TV is a monitor type.

#### **CONNECTING SPEAKERS**



#### **CONNECTING SPEAKER WIRE**

- Strip away approx. 3/8 inch (10 mm) of wire insulation.
- Twist the bared wire ends tight, to prevent short circuits.
- **3.** Loosen the knob by turning it counterclockwise.
- **4.** Insert the bare part of the wire into the hole in side of each terminal.
- **5.** Tighten the knob by turning it clockwise to secure the wire.



#### Caution:

- Be sure to use speakers with the specified impedance as shown on the rear panel of this unit.
- To prevent damage to circuitry, do not let the bare speaker wires touch each other and do not let them touch any metal part of this unit.
- Do not touch the speaker terminals when the power is on. It may cause vou to receive an electric shocks.
- Do not connect more than one speaker cable to one speaker terminal. Doing so may damage this unit.

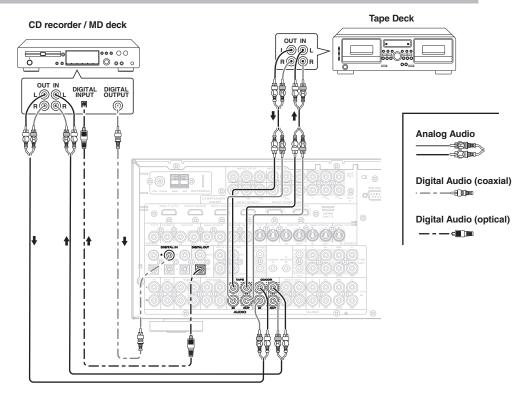
#### Note:

• Be sure to connect the positive and negative cables for the speaker properly. If they are miss-connected, the signal phase will be reversed and the signal quality will be corrupted.

#### **CONNECTING A SUBWOOFER**

Use the PRE OUT SUBWOOFER jack to connect a powered subwoofer (power amplifier built in ). If your subwoofer is a passive type (power amplifier is not built in), connect a monaural power amplifier to the PRE OUT SUBWOOFER jack and connect the subwoofer to the amplifier.

#### **CONNECTING AUDIO COMPONENTS**



The output audio signal from the TAPE OUT jack and the CD/CD RECORDER OUT jack is the same signal which is currently selected.

#### Caution:

• Do not connect this unit and other components to mains power until all connections between components have been completed.

#### Notes:

- Insert all plugs and connectors securely. Incomplete connections may make noise.
- Be sure to connect the left and right channels
- Red connectors are for the R (right) channel, and white connectors are for the L (left) channel.
- Be sure to connect input and output properly.
- Refer to the instructions for each component that is connected to this unit.
- · Do not bind audio/video connection cables with power cords and speaker cables this will result in generating a hum or other noise.

#### CONNECTING DIGITAL AUDIO COMPONENTS

- · There are 6 digital inputs, 3 coaxial jacks and 3 optical jacks, on the rear panel. You can use these jacks to input PCM. Dolby Digital and DTS bitstream signals from a CD, DVD, or other digital source components.
- · There is one digital output coaxial jack and one optical output jack on the rear panel. These jacks can be connected to a CD recorder-, or a MD deck inputs, respectively.
- Refer to the instructions for each component. To setup the digital audio format of DVD player, or other digital source's connected to digital input
- Use fiber optical cables (optical) for DIG-1.2.3 input jacks. Use 75 ohms coaxial cables (for digital audio or video) for DIG-4, 5, 6 input jacks.
- You can designate the input for each digital input/ output jacks according to your component. See page 24.

#### Notes:

- · There is no Dolby Digital RF input jack. Use an external RF demodulator Dolby Digital decoder when connecting the Dolby Digital RF output jack of the videodisc player to the digital input jack.
- The digital signal jacks on the SR7001 conform to the EIA standard. If you use a cable that does not conform to this standard, the SR7001 may not function properly.
- · Each type of audio jack works independently. Signals input through the digital and analog jacks are output through the corresponding digital and analog jacks, respectively.

#### **HDMI JACK**

This SR7001 has four HDMI inputs and one HDMI output (The SR8001 has two HDMI outputs.). It can send digital video and audio signals from DVDs and other sources directly to a display. It minimizes signal degradation caused by analog conversion so that high quality images can be enjoyed.

The SR7001 is also capable of converting analog video signals (Composite Video, S-Video, Component Video) for HDMI output.

Select an input source from the OSD menu system. (See page 24, 35)

#### Notes:

- When the HDMI output is connected to a display monitor that does not support HDCP, signals are not output. To view images in HDMI, it is necessary to connect to a display that supports HDCP.
- There may be no image output if connected to a TV or display that is not compatible with the above format
- Refer to the instruction manual of the TV or display to be connected to the SR7001 for detailed information regarding the HDMI terminal.
- \* HDCP: High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection

#### **CONNECTING HDMI DEVICES**

An HDMI cable (sold separately) is used to connect the HDMI jack on the SR7001 with the HDMI jack on a DVD player, TV, projector or other component. To transmit multichannel audio via HDMI, the connected player must support multichannel audio transmission through its HDMI jack.

HDMI video streaming is compatible with DVI in principle. Therefore, it is possible to connect to a TV or monitor that has a DVI terminal using an HDMI-DVI conversion cable or plug. When connecting to a DVI terminal, connect the audio signal separately.

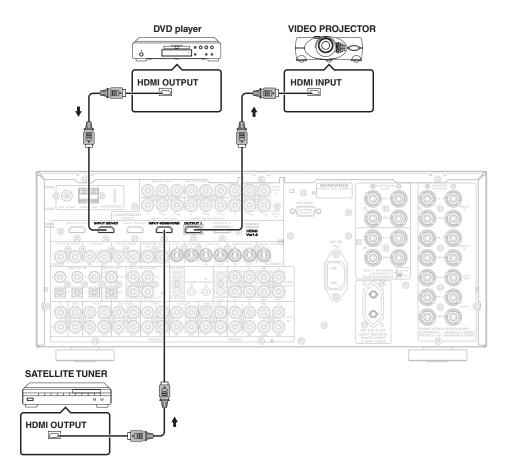
#### Notes:

- Some HDMI components can be controlled over the HDMI cable, but this receiver cannot control other components this way.
- When connected to a monitor (i.e., TV, projector, etc.) that does not support HDCP, video and audio are not output.
- DVI cables come with 24-pin and 29-pin plugs. This
  receiver supports 24-pin DVI-D cables; 29-pin DVI
  cables cannot connect to it.
- Some source devices such as DVD players or set top box do not support HDMI repeater operations like those of the SR7001. In such case, pictures are not properly projected on monitors such as TVs and projectors.

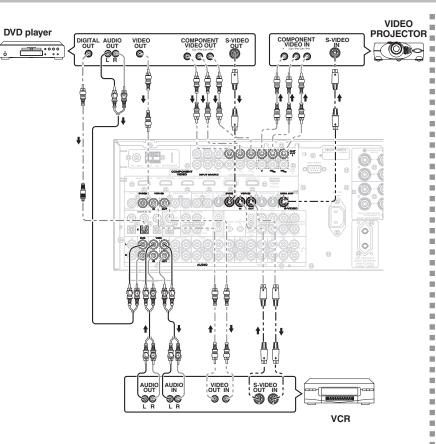
- When multiple components are connected to this receiver, turn power to unused components off to prevent interference between them.
- Disconnecting or connecting cables with the power on can damage the equipment. Turn the power off before disconnecting or connecting cables.
- Some DVD-Audio disks disable downmixing. These types of disks are not played back correctly unless the left, center, right and surround left and right speakers, and subwoofer are connected.
- If a DVD player that does not support HDMI 1.1 is connected to the SR7001, multi channel PCM playback is not possible even with DVD-Audio disks
- If an Super Audio CD player that does not support HDMI 1.2 is connected to the receiver, DSD playback is not possible even with Super Audio CD.

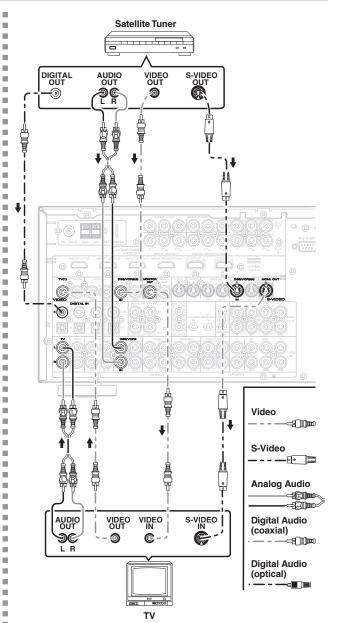
(\*DSD: Direct Stream Digital)

- If a DVD player or other device with DVI output is connected to the SR7001, a separate audio cable (optical-digital, coaxial digital or analog) is needed for the audio signals. In this case, select the connected audio input as explained in "1-1 FUNC INPUT SETUP". (See page 24)
- Multi channel PCM signals and audio signals of 62 kHz or higher that are input from the HDMI jack are not output from the DIGITAL OUT jacks.
- Depending on the quiality of the cable used, the HDMI signal may be affected by noise.



#### **CONNECTING VIDEO COMPONENTS**





#### VIDEO, S-VIDEO, COMPONENT JACKS

There are 3 types of video jacks on the rear panel.

#### VIDEO jack

The video signal for the VIDEO jacks is the conventional composite video signal.

#### S-VIDEO jack

The video signal is separated into luminance (Y) and color (C) signals for the S-VIDEO jack. The S-VIDEO signals enables high-quality color reproduction. If your video component has an S-VIDEO output, we recommend to use it. Connect the S-VIDEO output jack on your video component to the S-VIDEO input jack on the SR7001.

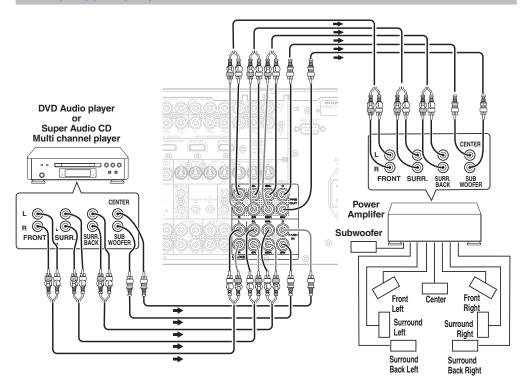
#### Component jack

Make component video connections to a TV or monitor with component inputs to produce higher quality video images. Use a component video cable or 3 video cords to connect the component video out jacks on the SR7001 to the monitor.

#### Notes:

- Be sure to connect the left and right audio channels properly.
- Red connectors are for the R (right) channel, and white connectors are the for L (left) channel.
- Be sure to connect the inputs and outputs of the video signals properly.
- If you connect the S-VIDEO or component signal to the S-VIDEO or component jack on the SR7001, it is not necessary to connect the conventional video signal to the VIDEO (composite) jack. If you use both video inputs, the SR7001 gives priority to the S-VIDEO signal.
- Each type of video jack works independently. Signals input to the VIDEO (composite) and S-VIDEO jacks or component are output to the corresponding VIDEO (composite) and S-VIDEO or component jacks, respectively.
- The SR7001 has the "TV-AUTO ON/OFF" function to turn the TV ON or OFF automatically, by sensing the incoming video signal from the VIDEO jacks.
- You may need to setup the digital audio output format of your DVD player, or other digital source components. Refer to the instructions of the each component connected to the digital input jacks.
- There is no Dolby Digital RF input jack. Use an external RF demodulator Dolby Digital decoder when connecting the Dolby Digital RF output jack of the videodisc player to the digital input jack.
- The COMPONENT OUTPUT 1 and 2 terminals of the SR7001 can output the same video signal. Moreover, the OUTPUT 2 terminal of the SR8001 can output video signals for multi room playback. (See page 34)

#### ADVANCED CONNECTING



#### CONNECTING MULTI CHANNEL AUDIO SOURCE

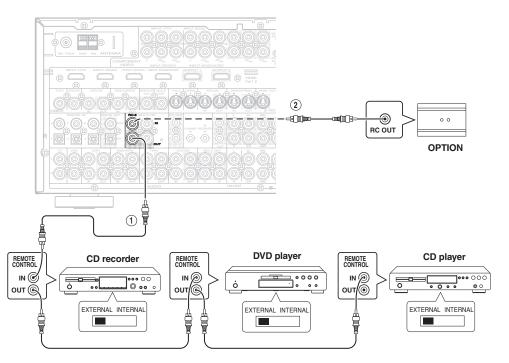
The 7.1CH INPUT jacks are for multichannel audio source such as a Super Audio CD multichannel player, DVD audio player or external decoder. If you use these jacks, switch on the 7.1CH INPUT and set the 7.1CH INPUT level by using the SETUP MAIN MENU. See page24.

# **CONNECTING AN EXTERNAL POWER AMPLIFIER**

The PREOUT jacks are for connecting external power amplifiers.

Be sure to connect each speaker to the corresponding external power amplifier.

#### CONNECTING THE REMOTE CONTROL JACKS



You can control other Marantz products through the SR7001 with the remote control by connecting the REMOTE CONTROL terminals on each unit.

The signal transmitted from the remote control is received by the remote sensor on the SR7001. Then the signal is sent to the connected device through this terminal. Therefore you need to aim the remote control only at the SR7001. Also, if a Marantz power amplifier (some models excluded) is connected to one of these terminals, the power amplifier's, power switch is synchronized with this unit's power switch.

Set the REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH on the other units, (not the SR7001) to "EXT." (external) to use this feature.

Whenever external infrared sensors or similar devices are connected to RC-5 IN of the SR7001, be sure to always disable operation of the infrared sensor on the

main unit by using the following procedure.1. Hold down the MULTI button and the MENU button on the front panel at the same time for

- five seconds.

  2. The setting "IR=ENABLE" is shown on the FL
- DISPLAY.

  3. Press the CURSOR buttons (◄, ▶) to change
- this to "IR=DISABLE".

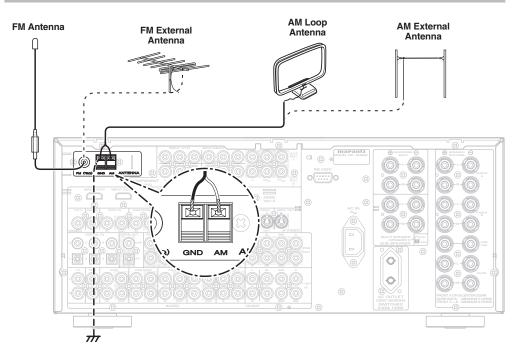
  4. Press the ENTER button. Once this setting is made, the infrared sensor on the main unit is

#### Note:

disabled.

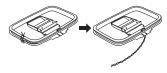
- Be sure to set to "IR=ENABLE" when external infrared sensors or similar devices are not connected. Otherwise, the main unit will be unable to receive remote control commands.
- To restore the original setting, perform steps 1 to 4 to set to "IR=ENABLE".

#### **CONNECTING THE ANTENNA TERMINALS**



#### ASSEMBLING THE AM LOOP ANTENNA

 Release the vinyl tie and take out the connection line.



2. Bend the base part in the reverse direction.



**3.** Insert the hook at the bottom of the loop part into the slot at the base part.



4. Place the antenna on stable surface.



#### **CONNECTING THE SUPPLIED ANTENNAS**

#### Connecting the supplied FM antenna

The supplied FM antenna is for indoor use only. During use, extend the antenna and move it in various directions until the clearest signal is received.

Fix it with push pins or similar implements in the position that will cause the least amount of distortion.

If you experience poor reception quality, an outdoor antenna may improve the quality.

#### Connecting the supplied AM loop antenna

The supplied AM loop antenna is for indoor use only.

Set it in the direction and position it to where you receive the clearest sound. Put it as far away as possible from the unit, televisions, speaker cables, and power cords.

If you experience poor reception quality, an outdoor antenna may improve the quality.

- **1.** Press and hold down the lever of the AM antenna terminal.
- Insert the bare wire into the antenna terminal.
- 3. Release the lever.

#### Note:

• Connect the shielded grounding wire (black) to the AM antenna GND terminal.

#### **CONNECTING AN FM OUTDOOR ANTENNA**

#### Notes:

- Keep the antenna away from noise sources (neon signs, busy roads, etc.).
- Do not put the antenna close to power lines. Keep it well away from power lines, transformers, etc.
- To avoid the risk of lightning and electrical shock, grounding is necessary.

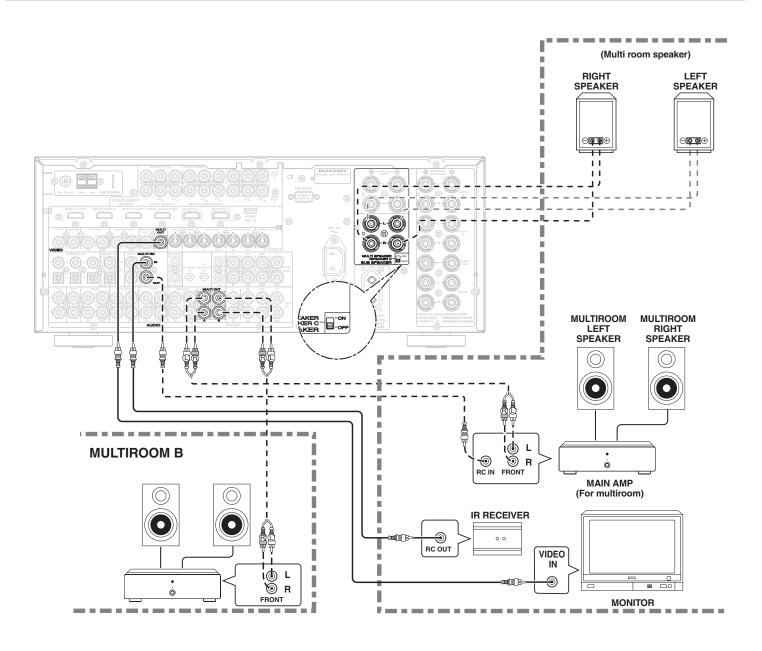
#### **CONNECTING AN AM OUTDOOR ANTENNA**

An outdoor antenna will be more effective if it is stretched horizontally above a window or outside.

#### Notes:

- · Do not remove the AM loop antenna.
- To avoid the risk of lightning and electrical shock, grounding is necessary.

#### CONNECTING FOR THE MULTI ROOM



#### CONNECTING FOR SPEAKER C USE

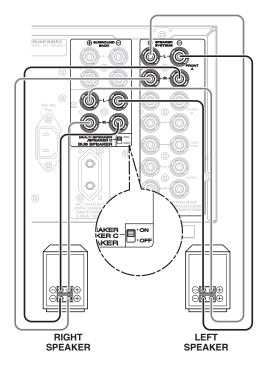
#### Bi-wire Connection

A bi-wire connection is possible with speakers that have two sets of inputs (for treble and bass).

This allows you to drive the treble and bass units with separate channel amps, which enables better sound quality. Connect the speakers as shown in the figure. Set the SPEAKER C selector switch on the rear panel to ON.

#### Notes:

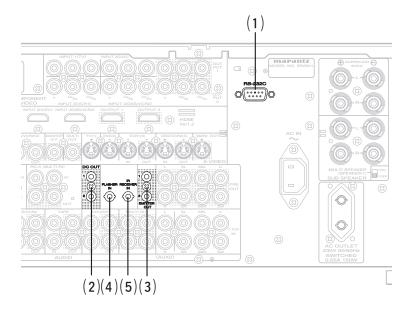
- If incorrectly connected, a protective circuit in the receiver will trip and set the receiver to standby. (The STANDBY indicator will flash.) In such case, recheck the connections between the speakers and the receiver.
- Turn power to the receiver off before changing the setting of the SPEAKER C selector switch.
- If the speaker is fitted with a shorting bar, remove the shorting bar.



#### Note:

 You can use surround back speaker terminals as MULTI SPK. terminals or SPEAKER C terminal when you are not using surround back speakers.

#### CONNECTING OTHER EQUIPMENT



#### (1) RS232C

Connect an external control device or other device for servicing. (Use a straight cable for the connection.)

# (2) DC OUT (DC TRIGGER)

External devices can be controlled from the SR7001 by connecting them to the DC OUT terminal (12 V).

# (3) EMITTER OUT (SR8001 Only)

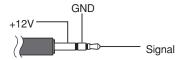
Outputs the remote control signal input to the IR RECEIVER IN terminals. External components can be controlled by connecting them to the EMITTER OUT terminal.

# (4) FLASHER IN

This receiver can be controlled by connecting a control box or other control device to this receiver.

# (5) IR RECEIVER IN (SR8001 Only)

This receiver can be operated by remote control without using the internal IR receiver, by connecting an external IR receiver.



An IR receiver is connected as shown above.

#### Caution:

- Wrongly connecting an IR receiver or connecting an IR receiver of the wrong voltage can damage the SR7001, therefore do not do this.
- 50 mA of current are supplied to the device connected to the IR RECEIVER IN terminal.
- Connecting a device that requires more than 50 mA of current to this receiver will damage this receiver. Before using other devices, carefully check the specifications of those devices.



After all components are connected, initial setup must be performed.

#### **ONSCREEN DISPLAY MENU SYSTEM**

The SR7001 incorporates an onscreen menu system, which makes various operations possible by using the cursor  $(\blacktriangle, \blacktriangledown, \blacktriangleleft, \blacktriangleright)$  and **OK/ENTER** buttons on the remote control unit or on the front panel.

#### Note:

- To view the onscreen displays, make certain you have connected the MONITOR OUT jack on the rear panel to the composite, S-Video, component video or HDMI input of your TV or projector. (See page 15, 16)
- 1. Press the AMP button on the remote control unit. (This step is not needed when operating the setup menus from the SR7001.)
- Press the MENU button on the remote control or press the MENU button on the front panel. The "MAIN MENU" of the OSD menu system is displayed.

There are 6 items in the MAIN MENU.

3. Select the desired sub-menu with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button. The display will change to the selected sub-menu.

#### Notes:

- If you desire to adjust any sub-menu, you need to set it to **UNLOCKED**.
- To lock sub-menus, set items 1-6 on the MAIN MENU to "LOCKED".

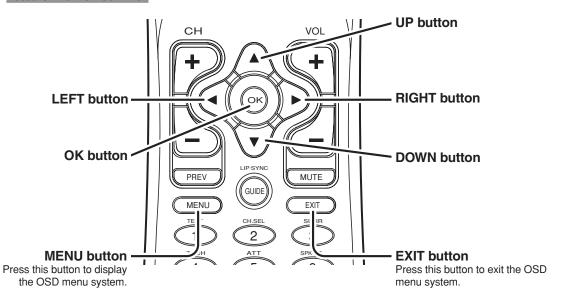
#### <LOCKING SUBMENUS>

- (1) Move the cursor to "1. INPUT SETUP" in the MAIN MENU.
- (2) Select the "●" mark left of "LOCKED" with the or ▶ cursor buttons.
- **4.** To exit from OSD menu system, press the **EXIT**button, or move the cursor to **EXIT** and press the **OK/ENTER** button.

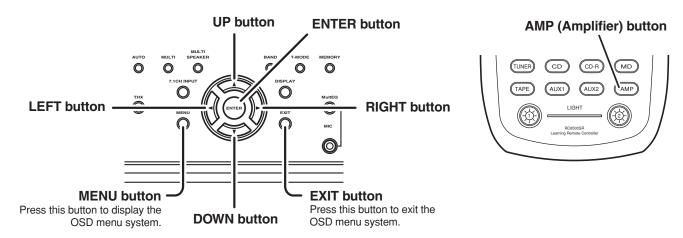
#### Note:

 Settings are entered with the ENTER button on the unit or the OK button on the remote control unit.
 When using the remote control unit, use the OK button as if it were the ENTER button.

#### RC8001SR BUTTON CONTROL

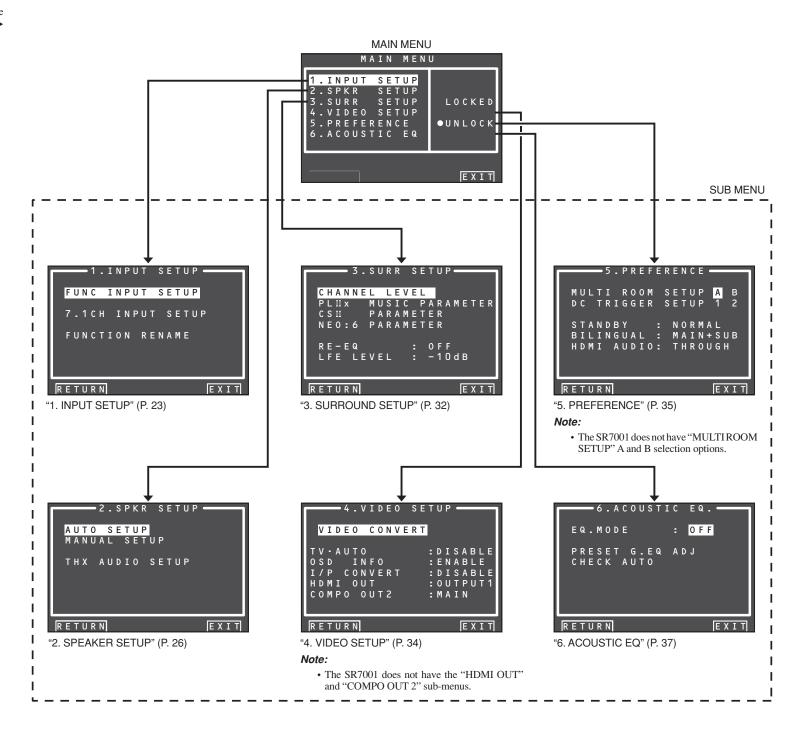


#### SR7001 FRONT BUTTON CONTROL



#### Note:

 After you complete this portion of the setup, move cursor to "RETURN" with the ▲, ▼, ◀ and ► cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.



#### 1 INPUT SETUP

This menu is for setting the matching the output of connected audio devices and the input jacks of this receiver.

#### • FUNC INPUT SETUP:

"1-1 FUNC INPUT SETUP" (see page 24)

#### • 7.1 CH INPUT SETUP:

"1-2 7.1 CH INPUT SETUP" (see page 24)

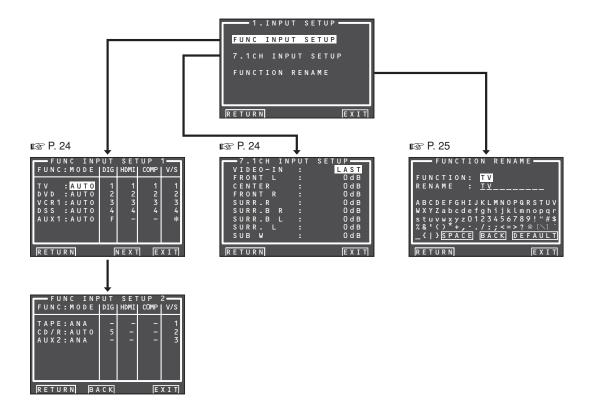
#### • FUNC RENAME :

"1-3 FUNCTION RENAME" (see page 25)

 Select "1. INPUT SETUP" from the MAIN MENU with ▲ or ▼ cursor button, and press the OK/ENTER button.



Select the desired sub-menu with the ▲ or
 ▼ cursor buttons, and press the OK/ENTER
 button.



# 1-1 FUNC INPUT SETUP (ASSIGNABLE DIGITAL INPUT)

The 6 and F (Front) digital inputs can be assigned to a desired source.

HDMI and COMPONENT inputs can be assigned to the preferred source.

Use this menu to select which digital input jacks are to be assigned to which input source.

 Select "FUNC INPUT SETUP" from the 1.INPUT SETUP menu with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.

FUNC INP				1- V/S
TV : AUTO DVD : AUTO VCR1: AUTO DSS : AUTO AUX1: AUTO	1 2 3 4 F	1 2 3 4 -	1 2 3 4 -	1 2 3 4 *
RETURN		N E X 1	E	XIT

 Select a setting with the ▲, ▼, ◄, and ▶ cursor buttons, and assign a mode and input jack (DIG, HDMI, COMP, V/S).

#### MODE

#### AUTO:

Select "AUTO", for automatic detection of the digital input signal condition.

If there is no digital signal, but there is an analog signal present, the analog signal will be played. "AUTO" is the initial setting of all input sources.

#### HDMI:

Select "HDMI", when only a HDMI signal will be used.

#### DIG:

Select "DIG", when only a digital signal will be used.

#### ANA:

Select "ANA" for input sources for which no digital input jacks are used.

#### DIG

6 and F(Front) digital inputs can be assigned to a desired source.

Assign the number of a digital input jack to the device.

#### **HDMI**

Assign the number of an HDMI input jack to the device.

#### Note:

• When FUNCTION MODE is set to HDMI and HDMI AUDIO of "5. PREFERENCE" is set to THROUGH, audio is not output from the SR7001. (See page 35)

#### COMP

Assign the number of a component video input jack to the device.

#### V/S

Assign the number of a composite video and S-video input jack to the device.

#### Note:

- Video and S-video can use the same numbers when assigning to input functions.
- The \* mark in AUX.1 indicates that other inputs cannot be assigned.
- Press the OK/ENTER button.
- **4.** Select each mode setting and input terminal with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.
- 5. Press the **OK/ENTER** button.
- Repeat steps 2-5 until all items are set.
- 7. After you complete this portion of the setup, move the cursor to "NEXT" with the ▲, ▼, ◄, and ▶ cursor buttons and then press the OK/ENTER button to go to the next page.



8. Repeat steps 2-5 until all items are set.

After you complete this portion of the setup, move the cursor to "RETURN" with ▲, ▼, ◄, and ▶ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.

To return to the Func Input Setup 1 menu from the Func Input Setup 2 menu, move the cursor to "BACK" with the ▲, ▼, ◄, and ▶ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.

#### Note:

Assignments cannot be made in sections with a \* mark.

#### 1-2 7.1 CH INPUT SETUP

This menu is for adjusting the speaker levels for 7.1-channel input sources.

Here you will adjust the volume for each channel so that they are all heard by the listener at the same level.

 Select "7.1 CH INPUT SETUP" from the 1.INPUT SETUP menu with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.



- Select "VIDEO-IN" with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons.
- Using the 

  ✓ or 

  ✓ cursor buttons, select the video input source to be played through the MONITOR OUT jack.

The input source is switched by pressing the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  cursor buttons as follows:

LAST  $\leftrightarrow$  TV  $\leftrightarrow$  DVD  $\leftrightarrow$  VCR1  $\leftrightarrow$  DSS  $\leftrightarrow$  AUX1  $\leftrightarrow$  V-OFF  $\leftrightarrow$  LAST  $\leftrightarrow$ ...

#### Notes:

- When "LAST" is selected, the source is set to the source selected before the 7.1 ch input menu was activated.
- When "V-OFF" is selected, no signal is emitted from MONITOR OUT jack.

- Select desired channel with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons
- **5.** Using the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons, adjust the volume level of each channel.

Move the cursor to "RETURN" with the ▲, ▼, ◄, and ► cursor buttons, and press the OK/ENTER button to go to the 1.INPUT SETUP menu.

#### Note:

• The volume level can be set between -12 dB and +12 dB in 1 dB increments on all channels except the subwoofer (SUB W), which can be set from -18dB to +12 dB in 1 dB increments.

#### 1-3 FUNCTION RENAME

Input sources can be registered under any name. This menu is for renaming input source.

This menu is for renaming function name. Names can be up to 10 characters long, including spaces. (Characters are selected from those appearing on the display.) This name appears on the receiver's FL display and the OSD, but it does not appear in the OSD Setup menu.

Select "FUNCTION RENAME" from the 1.
 INPUT SETUP menu with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.



- Select "FUNCTION" with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons.
- Select "RENAME" with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons.
- Move the cursor to the character (1st to 10th) to change with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.
- 6. Move the cursor to the character list with the ▼ cursor button. (Move the cursor to the letter "A" to begin with.)
- Select a character with the ▲, ▼, ◄, and ► cursor buttons.
- **8.** Press the **OK/ENTER** button to enter the selected letter.

**9.** Repeat steps 5-8 until the new name is input.

#### BACK:

Deletes the character left of the cursor in the "RENAME" area one character at a time.

#### DEFAULT:

Restores the name in the "**RENAME**" area to the name in the "**FUNCTION**" area.

#### SPACE:

Inserts a space at the cursor point of the "RENAME" area.

#### Note:

· RENAME cannot be left blank.

Move the cursor to "RETURN" with the ▲, ▼, ◄, and ► cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button to go to the 1. INPUT SETUP menu.

# 2 SPKR (SPEAKER) SETUP

After you have installed the SR7001 connected all the components and determined the speaker layout, it is now time to perform the settings in the Speaker Setup menu for the optimum sound acoustics for your environment and speaker layout.

Before you perform the following settings, it is important that you first determine the following characteristics:

• AUTO SETUP:

"2-1 AUTO SETUP (MultEQ Setup)" (see page 27)

• MANUAL SETUP:

"2-2 MANUAL SETUP" (see page 30)

**•THX AUDIO SETUP:** 

"2-3 THX AUDIO SETUP" (see page 31)

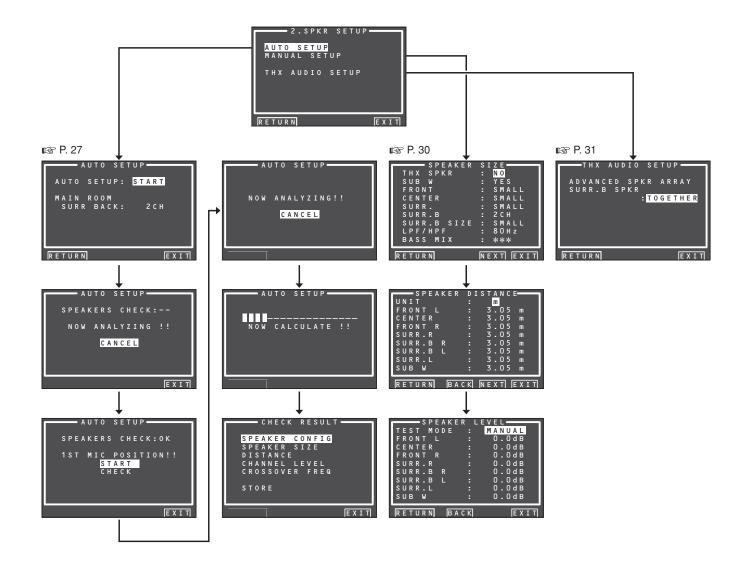
 Select "2.SPKR SETUP" from the MAIN MENU with ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ ENTER button.



 Select the desired menu with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons, and press the OK/ENTER button.

#### Note:

 After you complete this the portion of the setup, press the OK/ENTER button. The cursor will move to "RETURN" and press the OK/ENTER button to go to the Sub-menu.



#### 2-1 AUTO SETUP (MultEQ™ SETUP)

The AUTO SETUP (MultEQ<sup>TM</sup> Setup) feature of the SR7001 measures sound characteristics of the speaker system and room where the receiver is used and automatically optimizes settings.

The Audyssey MultEQ™ technology adopted by the SR7001 provides the best listening environment for multiple listeners.

To do this, the AUTO SETUP feature measures a test tone emitted by each channel in a maximum of 6 listening positions, using the supplied microphone.

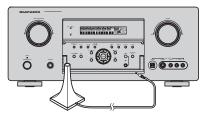
The measurement results are analyzed using an original algorithm and environmental settings are made to improve the sound characteristics of the listening area.

To set up the speaker system (i.e., adjusting speaker distance, etc.) without using the AUTO SETUP feature, see "MANUAL SETUP" on page 30 of the manual.

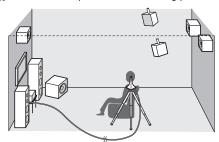
#### HOW TO PERFORM AUTO SETUP

During measurement, the OSD menu displays the condition, therefore turn power to the monitor on.

**1.** Connect the supplied microphone to the MIC jack on the SR7001.



2. Set the microphone in the listening position.



#### Notes:

• Measurement can be done in a maximum of 6 listening positions.

For the first measurement, set the microphone in the main listening position.

- Use a stand or tripod to position the microphone at ear height in the listening position.
- Remove any obstructions between the speakers and microphone.
- To use the internal subwoofer of the amp, set the volume to the middle point and set the crossover frequency to the highest.
- During measurement, step away from the microphone and operate the SR7001 via the remote control unit from a position that is out of the path of the speaker sound.
- The test tone output from the speakers during measurement is loud. Be mindful of neighbors and watch out for small children.
- 3. Either press the MultEQ™ button on the front panel of the SR7001 or select "2. SPKR SETUP" from the MAIN MENU, select "AUTO SETUP" with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons, and press the OK/ENTER button to display the start screen.
- **4.** Select the number of channels for the surround back speaker you are using.

For a 5.1 channel speaker system, select "NON" (Surround Back speaker off). (To use speaker C or multi speaker, select "NON". See page 19, 36.)

Select "START" with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button to start measurement.



5. Detection Check

During the detection check, the following OSD appears on the display and checks are made to detect dark sound in the listening room, whether there are speakers or not and polarity.



#### Note

 The detection check measures the state of use of all speakers whether actually used or not.

For example, if the center speaker is not used, the test tone will require time to go from the L-channel to the R-channel, therefore be careful not to unplug the microphone or operate the SR7001 during this time.

**6.** When the detection check ends, the following OSD appears on the display.



Here, to view the results of the detection check, select "CHECK" with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button. The results will be displayed.



If the check results indicate an error, take suitable action with that item and remeasure. (For error messages, see "ERROR MESSAGES" on page 29.)

After confirming the check results, select "RETURN" with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button to return to the OSD menu.

At this point, you can select "**EXIT**" to end Auto Setup and return to "2. SPKR SETUP".

7. Calibration Check



Select "START" with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button to measure the first point (main listening position).

During measurement, the following OSD appears on the display. At this point, you can cancel measurement by selecting "CANCEL" with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons and pressing the OK/ENTER button.



When this measurement ends, the following OSD appears on the display



8. Move the microphone to the second listening position, select "START" with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button to measure the second point. At this point, you can cancel second point measurement and calculate measurement results by selecting "CALCULATE" and pressing the OK/ENTER button.



**9.** Repeat steps 7 and 8 until measuring 6 points between the main listening position and surrounding positions.

When all measurements end, the following OSD appears on the display.



Select "CALCULATE" with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button to calculate measurement results. During calculations, the following OSD appears on the display.



#### Note:

- Less than 6 positions can be measured, but it is recommended to measure in all 6 positions in order to obtain the best results.
- The time needed to complete calculations depends on the number of connected speakers and measured listening positions. The more speakers and listening positions, the more time is needed.

#### 10. Checking Measurement Results

When calculations for the measurement results end, a screen appears for confirming the calculation results.



Select items to check with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons and press the **OK/ENTER** button to enter them.

#### Note:

To check equalizer (MultEQ) parameters, see page 38.

[Example] Confirmation screen for speaker detection



**[Example]** Confirmation screen for the distance from speakers to the listening position



\* The units can be changed by moving the cursor to [ft] of UNIT and pressing ◀ / ▶ the cursor buttons. Each time a ◀ / ▶ cursor button is pressed, the units alternate between [ft] (feet) and [m] (meters). **[Example]** Confirmation screen for speaker size and crossover frequency

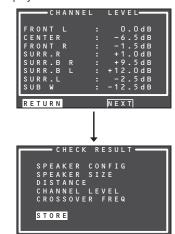




\* AUTO is displayed to indicate that the speaker size and crossover frequency results were automatically measured.

#### 11. Storing Measurement Results in Memory

Once finished confirming the measurement results, select "RETURN" with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button to display the CHECK RESULT screen.



Place the cursor on "STORE" and press the OK/ENTER button to store all parameters including the equalizer parameters in memory. If not wanting to store the calculation results in memory, place the cursor on "EXIT" and press the OK/ENTER button.

FXIT

#### Note:

Pressing "EXIT" prior to pressing "STORE" erases all measurement results and calculation results, therefore operate the remote control unit with care.

When storing operations end, the following OSD appears on the display.



#### Note:

Do not turn the power to the SR7001 off while storing parameters in memory. This may erase all data in the SR7001's memory and may damage the receiver.

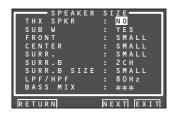
# **ERROR MESSAGES**

Displayed Error	Cause	How to Remedy
AUTO SETUP—  AUTO SETUP—  AUTO SETUP: START  MAIN ROOM SURR BACK: 2CH  MIC SET ERROR!!	The microphone is not properly connected.	<ul> <li>Connect the included microphone.</li> <li>Check the microphone connection.</li> </ul>
NOISE ERROR!!  SPEAKERS CHECK: **  NOISE ERROR !!  RETURN EXIT	There is too much noise in the listening room to measure properly.     Volume from the speakers is low.	<ul> <li>During measurement, turn off devices that make noise such as air conditioners.</li> <li>Measure at a time when the surrounding area is quiet.</li> </ul>
* Under ANALYZE ERROR, select "NEXT" with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button. A detail screen like the following appears on the display.	The speakers required for suitable playback were not detected.  Speaker polarity is connected backwards.  In the examples at left, the following trouble is detected.  The polarity of the left and right channels of the front speakers is backwards ([REV] appears on the display.)  The surround speaker is not connected ([NON] is displayed), but the surround back speaker is connected (In this kind of situation, [ERR] is displayed for all surround and surround back speakers.)	Check the speaker that is indicated as having reversed polarity ([REV] can appear with some speakers even when properly connected. In such case, ignore the error indication.) Check speaker direction and layout
SPEAKER CONFIG- CHECK!! SPEAKER FRONT L: YES REV CENTER: NON FRONT R: YES REV SURR.B R: YES ERR SURR.B R: YES ERR SURR.B L: YES ERR SURR.B L: YES ERR SURR.B L: YES ERR SURR.B L: YES ERR	An error is indicated in addition to the above if the speakers are connected as follows.  • When using just one surround back speaker, but it is connected to the surround back R-channel  (To use just one surround back speaker, connect it to the L-channel.)	

#### 2-2 MANUAL SETUP

- Select "2. SPKR SETUP" from the MAIN MFNIJ
- Select "MANUAL SETUP" with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons.
- Press the OK/ENTER button to enter the selection.

#### <SPEAKER SIZE>



When setting the speaker size in the SPEAKER SIZE menu, use the guidelines below.

#### LARGE:

The complete frequency range for the channel you are setting will be output from the speaker.

#### SMALL:

Frequencies of the channel you are setting that are lower than approx. 80 Hz will be output from the subwoofer.

If the SUB. W is set to "NONE" and the front speakers are set to "LARGE," then the sound will be output from both the left and right speakers.

- Select each speaker with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons.
- Set the size of each speaker with the ◀ or ► cursor buttons.
- After you complete this portion of the setup, move the cursor to "NEXT" with the ▲, ▼, ◄ and
   cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button to go to the next page.

#### THX SPKR

If you are using a full THX speaker systems which are approved by THX Ltd:

- The front, center and surround speaker size should be "SMALL".
- · The subwoofer should be "YES".
- LPF/HPF (the crossover frequency) should be "80Hz".

You need to set the number of surround back speakers and the surround back speaker size should be "SMALL".

#### SUB W

#### YES:

Select when a subwoofer is connected.

#### NO:

Select when a subwoofer is not connected.

#### FRONT

#### LARGE:

Select if the front speakers are large.

#### SMALL:

Select if the front speakers are small.

• If "NO" is selected for the subwoofer setting, then this setting is fixed at "LARGE".

#### **CENTER**

#### NONE:

Select if no center speaker is connected.

#### LARGE

Select if the center speaker is large.

#### SMALL:

Select if the center speaker is small.

#### SURR.

#### NONE:

Select if no surround left and right speakers are connected.

#### LARGE:

Select if the surround left and right speakers are large.

#### SMALL:

Select if the surround left and right speakers are small.

#### SURR. B

#### NONE:

Select if no surround back left and right speakers are connected.

#### 2CH:

Select if the surround back left and right speakers are connected.

#### 1CH:

Select if one surround back speaker is connected. In this case, the audio signal is emitted from the SURR BACK LEFT output terminal.

#### Notes:

 If "NONE" is selected for the SURR. setting, then this setting is fixed to "NONE."

#### SURR. BACK SIZE

#### LARGE:

Select if the surround back speakers are large.

#### SMALL:

Select if the surround back speakers are small.

#### Note:

• If "NONE" is selected for the SURR. setting, then this setting is not available.

#### LPF/HPF

When you use a subwoofer, you can select the cutoff frequency for the small speakers used. Select one of the crossover frequency levels according to the size of the small speakers connected.

 $60\text{Hz} \rightarrow 80\text{Hz} \rightarrow 100\text{Hz} \rightarrow 120\text{Hz} \rightarrow 140\text{Hz} \rightarrow 160\text{Hz} \rightarrow 180\text{Hz}$ 

#### Note:

• If using small front speakers, set a slightly higher frequency. If using large front speakers, set a slightly lower frequency.

#### BASS MIX

 The bass mix setting is only valid when "LARGE" is set for the front speakers and "YES" is set for the subwoofer during stereo playback.

This setting has effect only during playback of PCM or analog stereo sources.

 When "BOTH" is selected, the low frequencies will be played through the main L&R speakers and the subwoofer.

In this playback mode, the low frequency range expands more uniformly throughout the room, but depending on the size and shape of the room, interference may result in a decrease of the actual volume of the low frequency range.

 By selecting "MIX", the low frequencies will play through the main L&R only. This selection is preferred by THX.

#### Note:

- LFE signals during playback of Dolby Digital or DTS will be played through the subwoofer.
- 7. After you complete this portion of the setup, move the cursor to "NEXT" with the ▲, ▼, and ▶ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button to go to the next page.

#### <SPEAKER DISTANCE>



Use this menu to specify the distance of each speaker's position from the listening position. The delay time is automatically calculated according to these distances.

Begin by determining the ideal or most commonly used seating position in the room.

This is important for the timing of the acoustics to create the proper sound space that the SR7001 and today's sound systems are able to produce.

#### Note:

- For speakers for which you have selected "NONE", the speaker configuration sub-menu will not appear here. (There are several useful books and special DVD and LD's available to guide you through proper home theater configuration. If you are unsure, have your Marantz dealer perform the installation for you. They are trained professionals familiar with even the most sophisticated custom installations. Marantz recommends the www.cedia.org website for further information.)
- Select either m (meters) or ft (feet) for UNIT with the ◀ or ► cursor buttons.
- **9.** Select each speaker with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons
- 10. Set the distance for each speaker , press the 
  or ▶ cursor buttons.

#### FRONT L:

Set the distance from the front left speaker to your normal listening position.

#### CENTER:

Set the distance from the center speaker to your normal listening position.

#### FRONT R:

Set the distance from the front right speaker to your normal listening position.

#### SURR. L:

Set the distance from the surround left speaker to your normal listening position.

#### SURR. R:

Set the distance from the surround right speaker to your normal listening position.

#### SUB W:

Set the distance from the subwoofer to your normal listening position.

#### SURR. B L:

Set the distance from the surround back left speaker to your normal listening position.

#### SURR. BR:

Set the distance from the surround back right speaker to your normal listening position.

#### Notes:

 Set the distance to each speaker in meters (m) or feet (ft) as follows.

m: 0.03 - 9.15 m in 0.03 m steps

ft: 0.1 - 30.0 ft in 0.1 ft steps

(The values appearing on the FL display are approximate.)

- For the speakers that you have selected "NONE" the speaker size menu will not appear.
- The setting for surr.back L and surr.back R appears if it is set, two surround back speakers in the SPEAKER SIZE menu.
- The setting of SURR. BACK appears if it is set for one surround back speaker in the SPEAKER SIZE menu.
- 11. After you complete this portion of the setup, move the cursor to "NEXT" with the ▲, ▼, ◄ and ► cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button to go to the next page.

#### <SPEAKER LEVEL>

			S	Р	Ε	Α	K	Ε	R		L	Ε	٧	Ε	L					
TE	E S			М		D	Ε						М	Α	N	U	Α	L	П	
FF	0 9	Ν	Т		L									0		0	C	E	3	
CE	ΕN		Ε	R										0		0	d	E	3	
FF	₹ 0	Ν	Т		R									0		0	d	E	3	
sι	J R	R		R										0		0	d	E	3	
sι	J R	R		В		R								0		0	d	E	3	
sι	J R	R		В		L								0		0	d	E	3	
sι	J R	R		L										0		0	d	E	3	
sι	JΒ		W											0		0	d	E	3	
R E	T	U	R	N			В	Α	С	K							E		( I	T

Here you can set the volume for each speaker so that they are all heard by the listener at the same level. We recommend holding a dB SPL (Sound Pressure Level) meter at the listening position, at arms length, and pointing straight up at the ceiling, adjust the level of each speaker in turn unit it reads 75dB SPL when the meter is set to "C" weighting and Slow responce.

#### Note:

 The speaker level settings are not available in 7.1 Channel Input mode, Pure Direct mode and Source Direct mode.

#### TEST MODE:

Select "MANUAL" or "AUTO" generation of the test tone with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.

If you select "AUTO", the test tone will be cycled through in a circular pattern beginning at Left → Center → Right → Surround Right → Surround Back Right → Surround Back Left → Surround Left → Subwoofer → Left, in 2 seconds increments for each channel.

Using the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  cursor buttons, adjust the volume level of the noise from the speaker so that it is the same level for all the speakers.

If you select "MANUAL", adjust the output level of each speaker as listed below.

12. Move the cursor to FRONT L by pressing the ▼ cursor button. The SR7001 will emit a pink noise from the front left speaker.

Remember the level of this noise and then press the ▼ cursor button.

(Note that this can be adjusted to any level between -12 and +12 dB in 0.5 dB increments.)

The SR7001 will now emit the pink noise from the center speaker.

- 13. Using the 

  and 

  cursor buttons, adjust the volume level of the noise from the center speaker so that it is the same level as the front left speaker.
- 14. Press the ▼ cursor button again. The SR7001 will now emit the pink noise from the front right speaker.
- 15. Repeat steps 13 and 14 for the front right and other speakers until all speakers are adjusted to the same volume level.

After you complete this portion of the setup, press the **OK/ENTER** button to move the cursor to "**RETURN**". Press the **OK/ENTER** button to go to "**2. SPKR SETUP**".

#### Notes:

- Speakers for which you selected "NONE" in the SPEAKER SIZE menu will not appear.
- Surr. Back L and Surr. Back R appear if it is set for two surround back speakers in the SPEAKER SIZE menu.
- Surr. Back appears if it is set for one surround back speaker in the SPEAKER SIZE menu.
- To adjust the speaker levels for 7.1 channel input sources, you will need to use the 7.1 Ch Input sub menu. (See page 32)
- SUB W can be set from -18dB to +12dB.

#### 2-3 THX AUDIO SETUP

You can set the advanced Speaker Array.

- Select "2. SPEAKER SETUP" from the MAIN MENU.
- Select "THX AUDIO SETUP" with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons.
- Press the OK/ENTER button to enter the selection.



#### Advanced Speaker Array (ASA)

#### SURR.B SPKR: TOGETHER, CLOSE or APART

The best ASA effect is when the surround back speakers are together and facing forward.

If the distance between the surround back speakers is.

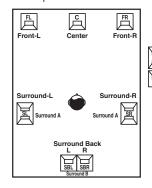
- · Less than 12 in. (30 cm): TOGETHER
- Greater than 12 in. (30 cm), and less than 48 in. (122 cm): CLOSE
- · Greater than 48 in. (122 cm): APART

#### Speaker type and positioning

This diagram shows the desired positioning for 7.1 channel speaker systems used in ASA mode. During system setup, select the distance between surround back speakers.

Di-polar Radiating Speake

**Direct Radiating Speake** 



#### Note:

 If you set SURR.B = 1CH or NONE in the SPEAKER SIZE menu, Advanced Speaker Array will not be activated.

After you complete this portion of the setup, move the cursor to "RETURN" with △, ▼, ◀ and ▶ cursor buttons and press OK/ENTER button to go to the 2. SPKR SETUP menu.

#### 3 SURROUND SETUP

This menu is for setting surround effect parameters for the various surround input signals so as to bring out the live audio effect of your speaker system.

#### CHANNEL LEVEL:

"3-1 CHANNEL LEVEL" (see page 32)

#### • PLIIX MUSIC PARAMETER:

"3-2 PLIIX MUSIC PARAMETER" (see page 33)

#### • CSII PARAMETER:

"3-3 CSII PARAMETER" (see page 33)

#### • NEO:6 PARAMETER:

"3-4 NEO:6 PARAMETER" (see page 33)

- Select "3. SURR SETUP" from the MAIN MENU with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.
- Select the desired menu with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.



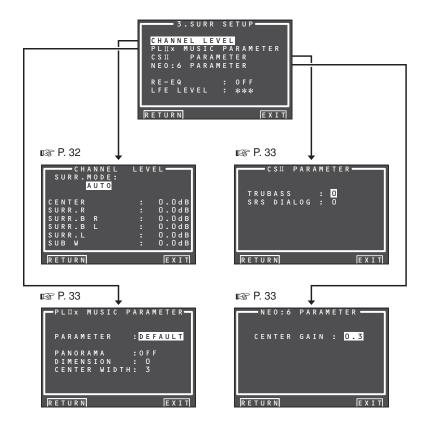
#### RE-EQ:

Turns THX Cinema Re-EQ<sup>TM</sup> on and off.
Select the Cinema Re-EQ<sup>TM</sup> with the ◀ or ▶ cursor button to activate it.

#### LFE LEVEL:

Select the output level of the LFE signal included in the Dolby Digital signal or the DTS signal. Select "0dB", "-10 dB" or "OFF" with ◀ or ▶ cursor button.

After you complete this portion of the setup, move the cursor to "**RETURN**" with the  $\triangle$ ,  $\nabla$ ,  $\triangleleft$ ,  $\triangleright$  cursor buttons and press the **OK/ENTER** button.



#### Note:

 After you complete this portion of the setup, press the OK/ENTER button to move the cursor to "RETURN" and press the OK/ENTER button again to go to sub-menu.

#### 3-1 CHANNEL LEVEL

- Select "3. SURR SETUP" from MAIN MENU with ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ ENTER button.
- Select "CHANNEL LEVEL" with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.
- Set the SURR. MODE with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.



4. Select the desired menu item with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons, set the desired level with the ⋖ or ▶ cursor buttons, and press the OK/ENTER button.

#### SURROUND MODE:

The surround mode can be independently set for 3 modes.

- 1. Multi Ch STEREO
- 2. CSII
- 3. Others

#### CHANNEL LEVEL

#### **CENTER LEVEL:**

Set the effect level of the center speaker between -12 and +12 level in 0.5 level interval.

 If "NONE" was selected for the center speaker setting in the SPEAKER SIZE, then this setting will not appear.

#### **SURR L or R LEVEL:**

Set the effect level of the Surround speaker between -12 and +12 level in 0.5 level interval.

 If "NONE" was selected for the surround speakers setting in the SPEAKER SIZE, then this setting will not appear.

#### SURR. BACK L or R LEVEL:

Set the effect level of the Surround Back speaker between **–12** and **+12** level in 0.5 level interval.

 If "NONE" was selected for the surround back speakers setting in the SPEAKER SIZE, then this setting will not appear.

#### SUB W LEVEL:

Set the effect level of the subwoofer speaker between -18 and +12 level in 0.5 level interval.

 If "NONE" was selected for the subwoofer speaker setting in the SPEAKER SIZE, then this setting will not appear.

#### Note:

 Setting to a mode other than multichannel stereo or CSII will affect the speaker level as explained in "2-2 MANUAL SETUP".

After you complete this portion of the setup, move the cursor to "**RETURN**" with the  $\triangle$ ,  $\nabla$ ,  $\triangleleft$  and  $\triangleright$  cursor buttons and press the **OK/ENTER** button to go to the 3. SURR SETUP menu.

#### 3-2 PLIIx (PRO LOGIC IIx) MUSIC PARAMETER

Pro LogicIIx-Music mode creates a rich and enveloping surround ambience from stereo sources such as CDs.

In this mode, the SR7001 includes three controls to fine-tune the sound field as follows.

- Select "3. SURR SETUP" in MAIN MENU with ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ ENTER button.
- Press the OK/ENTER button to enter the selection.



#### PARAMETER:

Select "DEFAULT" or "CUSTOM" with the ◀ or ► cursor buttons.

If you select "CUSTOM", you can adjust three parameters as listed below.

#### PANORAMA:

Select the PANORAMA mode "**ON**" or "**OFF**" with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.

Panorama wraps the sound of the front left and right speakers around you, for an exciting perspective.

#### DIMENSION:

Set the DIMENSION level between -3 and +3 level in 1 level intervals with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.

Adjust the sound field either towards the front or towards the rear.

This can be useful to help achieve a more suitable balance from all the speakers with certain recordings.

#### **CENTER WIDTH:**

Set the CENTER WIDTH level between 0 and 7 in 1 level intervals with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.

Center width allows you to gradually spread the center channel sound into the front left and right speakers.

At its widest setting, all the sound from the center is mixed into the left and right speakers.

This control may help achieve a more spacious sound or a better blend for the front image.

If "NONE" was selected for the center speaker setting in the SPEAKER SIZE menu, this setting cannot be selected.

After you complete this portion of the setup, move cursor to "RETURN" with the ▲, ▼, ◀ and ▶ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.

#### 3-3 CSII PARAMETER

- Select "3. SURROUND SETUP" from MAIN MENU with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.
- Select "CS II PARAMETER" with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons.
- Press the OK/ENTER button to enter the selection.



#### TRUBASS:

Set the TRUBASS level between 0 and 6 in 1- level increments with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.

TRUBASS produced by the speakers are an octave below the actual physical capabilities of the speakers adding exciting, deeper bass effects.

#### SRS DIALOG:

Set the SRS DIALOG level between 0 and 6 in 1-increments with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.

This can be popped out of the surround audio effects, allowing the listener to easily discern what the actors say.

If "NONE" was selected for the center speaker setting in the SPEAKER SIZE menu, this setting cannot be selected.

After you complete this portion of the setup, move cursor to "RETURN" with the △, ▼, ◀ and ▶ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.

#### Note:

• This parameter can only be set in the CSII mode.

#### 3-4 NEO:6 PARAMETER

The DTS NEO:6 mode enables a maximum 6.1 channel output with just 2 channel input. (It also supports 5.1 channel input.)

This mode expands the sound image from the center channel.

- Select "3. SURROUND SETUP" from MAIN MENU with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.
- Select "NEO:6 PARAMETER" with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons.
- Press the OK/ENTER button to enter the selection.



 Set the CENTER GAIN level between 0.0 and 1.0 in 0.1 level increments with the 

or 

cursor buttons.

After you complete this portion of the setup, move cursor to "RETURN" with the △, ▼, ◀ and ▶ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.

#### Notes:

- This parameter can only be set in the NEO:6-Music mode.
- If "NONE" was selected for the center speaker setting in the SPEAKER SIZE menu, this setting is disabled

#### 4 VIDEO SETUP

Video settings are made as follows.

 Select "4. VIDEO SETUP" from the MAIN MENU with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.



 Select the desired menu with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.

#### VIDEO CONVERT

"4-1 VIDEO CONVERT"

#### TV-AUTO

Select the TV AUTO ON/OFF function to enable or disable with the ◀ or ► cursor buttons. (refer to page 45)

#### OSD INFO

Select the OSD information function to "ENABLE" or "DISABLE" with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons. If you select "ENABLE", the SR7001 will display the status of the feature (Volume up/down, input select, etc..) on the monitor. If you do not desire this information, select "DISABLE".

#### Note:

 OSD information is not output to Monitor Output of HDMI and Component Video. However, OSD information is output if the Video Convert function is used to output Video or S-Video video signals to Monitor Out of HDMI and Component Video.

For details, refer to "VIDEO CONVERT" on page 40.

#### IP CONVERT

Select the IP CONVERT ON/OFF function to enable or disable with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons. (refer to page 40)

#### HDMI OUT

(This feature is not available on the SR7001.)

This setting is for selecting which output terminal, HDMI 1 or HDMI 2, to output the signal to. Select the output destination with the  $\blacktriangleleft$  /  $\blacktriangleright$  cursor buttons.

#### COMPONENT OUT

(This feature is not available on the SR7001.)

This setting is for selecting whether to output the images for the main room or the images for the multi room system to the COMPONENT MONITOR OUT 2 terminal. Select the output destination between MAIN and MULTI with the ◀/▶ cursor buttons.

#### Note:

 When MULTI 1 is selected, video signals converted from the MONITOR OUT 2 terminal are not output.

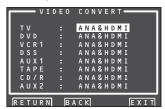
After you complete this portion of the setup, move cursor to "**RETURN**" with the  $\blacktriangle$ ,  $\blacktriangledown$ ,  $\blacktriangleleft$  and  $\blacktriangleright$  cursor buttons and press the **OK/ENTER** button.

#### 4-1 VIDEO CONVERT

The SR7001 is equipped to convert video signals for monitor output.

This section explains how to set up conversion for each type of video input.

- Select "4. VIDEO SETUP" from the MAIN MENU with the ▲ / ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.
- Select "VIDEO CONVERT" with the ▲/▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.



 Select "FUNCTION" with the ▲ / ▼ cursor buttons and set the video conversion mode with the ◄/▶ cursor buttons

#### ANA&HDMI:

This mode both up-converts and down-converts analog video signals (Composite Video, S-Video, Component Video). Furthermore, it up-converts from analog video signal to HDMI. (It cannot down-convert from HDMI digital video signals to analog video signals.)

#### ANA ONLY:

This mode both up-converts and down-converts analog video signals (Composite Video, S-Video, Component Video). It does not up-convert to HDMI.

#### OFF:

This mode turns off all conversion features.

#### Note:

• For details on video convert feature, see page 40.

#### **5 PREFERENCE**

• MULTI ROOM SETUP:

"5-1 MULTI ROOM SETUP" (see page 36)

• DC TRIGGER SETUP:

"5-2 DC TRIGGER SETUP" (see page 36)

1. Select "5. PREFERENCE" from MAIN MENU with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the **OK/ENTER** button.



2 Select the desired menu with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the **OK/ENTER** button.

#### STAND BY:

When this is set to "ECONOMY", you can reduce the power consumption when the unit is in the Standby mode. When "ECONOMY" is selected, "TV AUTO" and "RS-232C" are disabled when the unit is in the Standby mode.

#### **BILINGUAL:**

In the Bilingual mode, Dolby Digital and DTS output is set to either "MAIN" or "SUB". Select "BILINGUAL" with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons, then select MAIN ↔ SUB ↔ MAIN+SUB with the ◀ or cursor buttons.

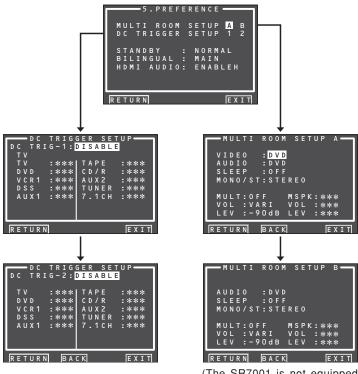
#### **HDMI AUDIO:**

This setting determines whether to play back audio input to the HDMI jacks through the SR7001 or output it through the receiver to a TV or projector.

**ENABLE:** The audio input to the HDMI jacks can be played back by this receiver. In such case, audio signals are not output to the TV or projector.

THROUGH: The audio input to the HDMI jacks is not output from the speaker terminals of the SR7001. Audio data is output directly to the TV or projector. This setting is used to listen to audio on a multi channel TV. etc.

After you complete this portion of the setup, move the cursor to "RETURN" with the ▲, ▼, ◀ and ▶ cursor buttons and press the **OK/ENTER** button.



(The SR7001 is not equipped with the MULTI ROOM SETUP B feature)

#### 5-1 MULTI ROOM SETUP

The SR8001 has source selectors, sleep timers and multispeaker output remote control units (Room A only) for the two other rooms in the multi room system. (The SR7001 has only one other room in the multi-room system.)

These features can be set from this menu.

- Select "5. PREFERENCE" from the MAIN MENU with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.
- Select "MULTI ROOM SETUP" with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and select either "Room A" or "Room B" with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.
- Press the OK/ENTER button to enter the setting.

The following explanation shows how to operate MULTI ROOM A of the multi-room system.

The MULTI ROOM B setting does not have the VIDEO FUNCTION.

(The SR7001 does not have a MULTI ROOM B setting)



 Select the desired item with the ▲ or ▼ cursor button.

#### VIDEO:

Select the video source of the multiroom output with the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  cursor buttons.

#### AUDIO:

Select the audio source of the multiroom output with the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  cursor buttons.

#### SLEEP:

The sleep mode is available when the multiroom is active, set the time with ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons. The sleep timer can be set to a maximum 90 minutes in 10 minute increments.

#### MONO/ST:

This mode switches audio output to the multi room system between MONAURAL and STEREO, using the ◀ and ▶ cursor buttons.

#### **MULTI (MULTI ROOM):**

Switch the multiroom output "ON" or "OFF" with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.

#### MSPK (MULTI SPEAKER):

Switch the speaker output "**ON**" or "**OFF**" with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.

#### **VOL (VOLUME SETUP):**

Select whether the multiroom or multi speaker output level is variable or fixed with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.

#### **LEVEL (VOLUME LEVEL):**

Adjust the multiroom output level with the ◀ or ► cursor buttons. The volume can be set between -90 dB and 0 dB in 1 dB increments.

#### Note:

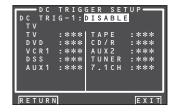
- This setting can be changed when the SURR B is set to "NONE" in the SPEAKER SIZE menu and "SPEAKER C" is in the OFF position on the rear panel. When this setting is unavailable, "\*\*\*" is displayed.
- If "VOLUME" is set to "FIXED", the multiroom output level cannot be adjusted from the A or B room.
- MSPK cannot be on for both Room A and Room B at the same time. After you complete this portion of the setup, move the cursor to "RETURN" with the ▲ or
   ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.

#### 5-2 DC TRIGGER SETUP

This unit has 2 DC trigger control jacks, which can be used to link with input functions for the main room or multiroom.

Each trigger can be setup separately.

- Select "5. PREFERENCE" from MAIN MENU with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.
- Select "DC TRIGGER SETUP 1or 2" with the
   ▲, ▼, ◀ and ▶ cursor buttons.
- Press the OK/ENTER button to enter the selection.



4. You can select "MAIN ROOM", "MULTI ROOM A", "MULTI ROOM B", "REMOTE" or "DISABLE" with the 

or 

cursor buttons.

(The SR7001 does not have a MULTI ROOM B setting)

#### Note:

- REMOTE is available for the external control. The RC8001SR cannot operate the function.
- Select desired input source with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons.
- **6.** Set to "ON" or "OFF" with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.
- 7. After you complete this portion of the setup, move the cursor to "RETURN" with the ▲ or ▼ cursor button and press the OK/ENTER button.

#### Note:

 When an input source that is on in the set room is selected, voltage is output to the DC TRIGGER output terminal.

#### 6 ACOUSTIC EQ

This display is for setting up the equalizer and changing the Equalizer mode.

#### • PRESET G. EQ ADJ:

"6-1 PRESET G. EQ ADJ" (see page 38)

#### CHECK AUTO 1 & 2 :

"6-2 CHECK AUTO" (see page 38)

#### EQ MODE:

There are 4 equalizer modes to choose from: PRESET G. EQ that allows the user to manually adjust the equalizer, and AUDYSSEY, FRONT and FLAT that automatically adjust the equalizer from the measurement results of the AUTO SETUP feature (see page 27).

#### AUDYSSEY:

This mode adjusts the frequency characteristics of all speakers so as to create the best listening environment for the sound characteristics of the listening room.

#### FRONT:

This mode matches the characteristics of each speaker to those of the front speakers.

#### FLAT:

This mode flattens the frequency characteristics of all speakers. It is suited for playback of multichannel music such as Dolby Digital and DTS.

#### PRESET:

This mode adjusts the graphic equalizer that  $\,S\,$  characteristics of each speaker (see page 38).

#### OFF:

The graphic equalizer is not used.

 Select "6. ACOUSTIC EQ" from MAIN MENU with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.

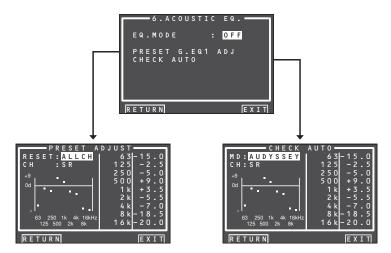


Select "EQ. MODE" with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons.  Select "FRONT", "FLAT", "AUDYSSEY", "PRESET" or "OFF" with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.

After you complete this portion of the setup, move the cursor to "**RETURN**" with the  $\triangle$ ,  $\blacktriangledown$ ,  $\blacktriangleleft$  and  $\blacktriangleright$  cursor buttons and press the **OK/ENTER** button.

#### Note:

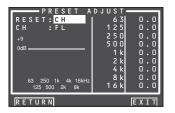
- "AUDYSSEY", "FRONT" and "FLAT" can be selected after executing the AUTO SETUP feature.
- If a speaker that was determined "NON" in Auto Setup is manually turned on, the "AUDYSSEY", "FRONT" and "FLAT" modes cannot be selected.
- The equalizer turns off when the Pure Direct mode, Source Direct mode, Dolby Headphone or Virtual mode is set.



#### 6-1 PRESET G. EQ ADJ

These modes allow you to set a 9-band graphic equalizer for each of the 7 channels.

- Select "6. ACOUSTIC EQ" from MAIN MENU with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.
- Select "PRESET G. EQ ADJ" with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons.
- **3.** Press the **OK/ENTER** button to enter the selection.



#### RESET:

Using the ◀ or ► cursor buttons, select the channel(s) to be reset to either the currently displayed channel ("CH") or all channels ("ALL"), and press the **OK/ENTER** button to enter the setting.

"ALL": Resets all channels.

"CH": Resets only the currently displayed channel.

#### CH:

Select the channel ("FL", "C", "FR", "SR", "SBR", "SBL" or "SL") to adjust with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons, and switch to the adjustment mode with the ▼ cursor button.

#### Frequency:

Select the target frequency on the graph with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button to enter the selection. Adjust the level with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons. (Note that this can be adjusted to any level between −20 and +9 dB in 0.5 dB increments.)

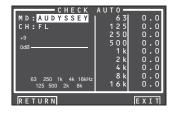
Move to the next frequency with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons, and adjust the level.

After you complete this portion of the setup, press the **OK/ENTER** button to enter the settings. Move cursor to "**RETURN**" with the ▲, ▼, ◀ and ▶ cursor buttons and press the **OK/ENTER** button.

#### 6-2 CHECK AUTO

These menus are for confirming the results of AUTO SETUP function equalizer measurement (AUDYSSEY, FRONT, FLAT).

- Select "6. ACOUSTIC EQ" from MAIN MENU with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ENTER button.
- Select "CHECK AUTO" with the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons.
- Press the OK/ENTER button to enter the selection.



Select MD (mode) with the  $\blacktriangle$  /  $\blacktriangledown$  cursor buttons followed by the desired equalizer ("AUDYSSEY", "FRONT", "FLAT").

#### CH:

Select the channel to check with the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons.

#### Notes:

- The frequency will not be exactly the same as in the Preset G. EO modes.
- FL and FR are not indicated on the CHECK AUTO 2 menu.
- 4. Once finished checking, select "RETURN" with the ▲ / ▼ cursor buttons and press the OK/ ENTER button to return to the "6. ACOUSTIC EQ" menu.

### **BASIC OPERATION** (PLAY BACK)

#### **SELECTING AN INPUT SOURCE**

Before you can listen to any input media, you must first select the input source on the SR7001.

#### Example: DVD



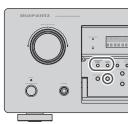


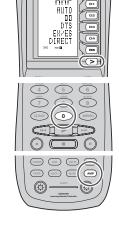
To select DVD, turn the INPUT SELECTOR knob on the front panel or press the DVD button on the remote two times in a row. After you have selected DVD, simply turn on the DVD player and play the DVD.

- · As the input source is changed, the new input name will appear momentarily an OSD information on the video display. The input name will also appear in the display, on the front-panel.
- If you use the FUNCTION RENAME feature (see page 25), the renamed name appears on the display.
- · As the input is changed, the SR7001 will automatically switch to the digital input, surround mode, attenuation, and night mode status which were entered during the configuration process for that source.
- When an audio source is selected, the last video input used remains routed to the VCR1 & DSS/ VCR2 Outputs and Monitor Output. This permits simultaneous viewing and listening to different
- · When a video source is selected, the selected video signal is output from the MONITOR OUT terminal.

#### SELECTING THE SURROUND MODE

#### **Example: AUTO SURROUND**





#### (Using the SR7001)

To select the Auto surround mode during playback, press the **AUTO** button on the front panel.

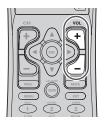
#### (Using the remote control unit)

To select the Auto surround mode, press the AMP button and press the > button until PAGE1 is displayed. Press the AUTO (D1) button.

- · For surround modes, see "Surround Mode" on page 41.
- · To add the THX mode to the Auto Surround mode, press either the THX button on the SR7001 or the **THX** button on the remote control unit.
- To select a specific surround mode, Press the individual surround mode button on page 1.2 on the remote control unit.

#### **ADJUSTING THE MAIN VOLUME**





Adjust the volume to a comfortable level using the VOLUME control knob on the front panel or **VOLUME** ▲ / ▼ buttons on the remote.

To increase the volume, turn the VOLUME knob clockwise or press **VOLUME** ▲ button on the remote, to decrease the volume, turn counterclockwise or press **VOLUME** ▼ button on the remote.

#### Notes:

- The volume can be adjusted within the range of  $-\infty$ to 18 dB, in steps of 1 dB.
- · However, when the channel level is set as described on page 32, if the volume for any channel is set at +1 dB or greater, the volume cannot be adjusted up to 18 dB.

(In this case the maximum volume adjustment range is "18 dB - Maximum value of channel level)

#### **NIGHT MODE**



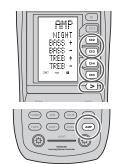
#### (Using the remote control unit)

To adjust the tone, press the AMP button and press the > button PAGE3 is displayed.

Press the NIGHT (D1) button to turn on the Night mode. Setting the Night mode to "ON" compresses the dynamic range in Dolby Digital only.

This softens loud passages such as sudden explosions, to help prevent disturbing others late at night. To turn off the Night mode, Press the NIGHT (D1) button again.

#### **ADJUSTING THE TONE (BASS & TREBLE)** CONTROL



During a listening session you may wish to adjust the Bass and Treble Control to suit your listening tastes or room acoustics.

#### (Using the remote control unit)

To adjust the tone, press the AMP button and press the > button PAGE3 is displayed.

To adjust the bass effect, press BASS+ (D2) or BASS- (D3).

To adjust the treble effect, TREB+ (D4) or TREB-(D5).

#### Notes:

- The tone control function is unavailable for the Source Direct, Pure Direct, Dolby Headphone, Dolby Virtual Speaker THX mode, and 192kHz PCM.
- The tone control function is not available when PRESET G.EO is being used.

#### **DIALOGUE NORMALIZATION MESSAGE**

Dialogue Normalization (Dial Norm) is a feature of Dolby Digital.

When playing back software which has been encoded in Dolby Digital, sometimes you may see a brief message on the FL display which will read "Dial Norm X dB" (X being a numeric value).

Dialogue Normalization serves to let you know if the source material has been recorded at a higher or lower level than usual. For example, if you see the following message: "Dial Norm + 4 dB" on the FL display, to keep the overall output level constant just turn down the volume control by 4 dB. In other words, the source material that you are listening to has been recorded 4 dB louder than usual.

If you do not see a message on the FL display, then no adjustment of the volume control is necessary.

#### **VIDEO CONVERT**

#### **ANALOG VIDEO CONVERSION**

The SR7001 is equipped to convert video signals for monitor output. Because of this, indifferent of the connection (VIDEO, S-VIDEO, COMPONENT VIDEO) between the playback device and the SR7001, listening and viewing are possible with a single higher grade cable between the MONITOR OUT terminal of the SR7001 and the monitor.

### UP-CONVERSION FROM ANALOG VIDEO SIGNALS TO HDMI

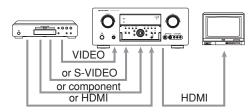
The up-conversion feature of the SR7001 can output the input analog video signals (for component video signals of 480i/576i, 480p/576P, 1080i and 720p resolution, and S-Video and Video (composite) of 480i/576i resolution) to the HDMI MONITOR terminal.

#### Notes:

- HDMI video input is only output to the HDMI MONITOR OUT terminal of the SR7001. If connecting a playback device such as a DVD player to the HDMI input jack, connect the HDMI MONITOR OUT terminal of the SR7001 to a TV monitor.
- This mode is unavailable for the REC out terminal.
- This mode is unavailable for still picture, fast forward and reverse play on video component.
- If, while attempting to use the video convert feature, the SR7001 cannot synchronize with the display device, "NO SIGNAL" appears on the monitor or noise is generated, this feature cannot be used. All of these signs are caused by equipment incompatibility; there is nothing wrong with the SR7001. If this occurs, set "VIDEO CONVERT" in the "VIDEO SETUP" menu to "DISABLE". Next, connect the video input signal to the display component via the MONITOR OUT terminal under VIDEO and the S-video input signal to the display component via the MONITOR OUT terminal under S-VIDEO.
- The video convert feature constantly monitors input video signals and determines whether to convert the input signals or not. However, some input video signals cannot be detected correctly. If this occurs, set "VIDEO CONVERT" in the "VIDEO SETUP" menu to "DISABLE".
- For optimal video performance, THX recommends setting the "VIDEO CONVERT" mode "DISABLE".

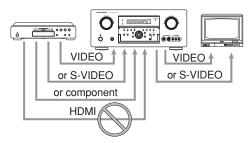
#### CONNECTION EXAMPLE

 When a monitor is connected to the HDMI MONITOR OUT terminal of the SR7001



#### Notes:

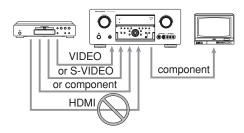
- If the resolution of the component video signal input from the playback device is other than 480i/576i, 480p/576P, 1080i or 720p, images are not output from the HDMI MONITOR OUT terminal of the SR8001.
- If the resolution of the S-Video or Video signal input from the playback device is other than 480i/576i, images are not output from the HDMI MONITOR OUT terminal of the SR7001.
- When a monitor is connected to the VIDEO or S-VIDEO MONITOR OUT terminals of the SR7001



#### Notes:

- The HDMI video signal input from the playback device is not output from the VIDEO or S-VIDEO MONITOR OUT terminals of the SR7001.
- If the resolution of the component video signal input from the playback device is other than 480i/576i, it is not output from the VIDEO or S-VIDEO MONITOR OUT terminals of the SR7001.

 When a monitor is connected to the COMPONENT VIDEO MONITOR OUT terminal of the SR7001



#### Notes:

 The HDMI video signal input from the playback device is not output from the COMPONENT VIDEO MONITOR OUT terminal of the SR7001.

#### Notes of OSD menu system:

- The setup menu can be displayed through all video out terminals ("HDMI", "COMPONENT", "SVIDEO" and "VIDEO").
- OSD information is output only to the VIDEO and S-VIDEO MONITOR OUT terminals.

OSD information is also output when the video conversion feature is on and the video signal input to the VIDEO or S-VIDEO input jack of the SR7001 is converted and output from the COMPONENT VIDEO or HDMI MONITOR OUT terminals.

#### I/P CONVERT

The video circuit of the SR7001 is equipped with an I/P conversion feature.

When this feature is on, 480i/576i analog video signals (VIDEO, S-VIDEO or COMPONENT VIDEO) input from a playback device can be converted to 480p/576p and progressively output to the COMPONENT VIDEO or HDMI MONITOR OUT terminals of the SR7001.

(For setting instructions, see page 34)

#### TEMPORARILY TURNING OFF THE SOUND



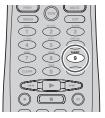
To temporarily silence all speaker outputs such as when interrupted by a phone call, press the **MUTE** button on the remote.

This will interrupt the output to all speakers and the head-phone jack, but it will not affect any recording or dubbing that may be in progress.

When the system is muted, the display will show "MUTE".

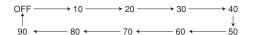
Press the **MUTE** button again to return to normal operation.

#### **USING THE SLEEP TIMER**



To program the SR7001 for automatic standby, press the **SLEEP** button on the remote.

Each press of the button will increase the time before shut down in the following sequence.



The sleep time will be shown for a few seconds in the display on the front panel, and it will count down until the time has elapsed.

When the programmed sleep time has elapsed, the unit will automatically turn off.

Note that the SLEEP indicator on the display will illuminate when the Sleep function is programmed. To cancel the Sleep function, press the **SLEEP** button until the display shows "SLEEP OFF" and the

### SURROUND MODE

#### **SURROUND**

The SR7001/SR8001 is equipped with many surround modes. These are provided to reproduce a variety of surround sound effects, according to the content of the source to be played.

The available surround modes may be restricted depending on the input signal and speaker setup.

#### SOURCE DIRECT

In the Source Direct mode, the tone control circuit Acoustic EQ. and bass management configuration are bypassed for full-range frequency response and the purist audio reproduction.

#### Notes:

- Speaker size is set to Front L/R = LARGE, Center = LARGE, Surround L/R = LARGE and Subwoofer = YES automatically. Tone controls, equalizer and additional processing are deactivated.
- When you use this mode with certain DVD and CD players, performing operations such as skip or stop may momentarily interrupt the output.

#### **PURE DIRECT**

The Pure Direct mode further reduces sources of noise in addition to effect of the Source Direct mode, by blocking output from the video jacks (VIDEO, S-VIDEO, COMPONENT VIDEO and HDMI) and turning the FL display off.

#### AUTO

When this mode is selected, the SR7001/SR8001 determines whether the digital input signal is Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Surround EX, DTS, DTS-ES, DTS 96/24 or PCM audio.

Surround EX & DTS-ES will operate for multichannel sources that have a Dolby Digital Surround EX or DTS-ES auto trigger flag in the digital signal.

When a Dolby Digital or DTS signal is input, the number of channels for which the corresponding signal is encoded will be played.

Inputting a Dolby Digital two channel signal with Dolby surround status automatically subjects that signal to Pro Logic IIx movie processing before play. PCM 96 kHz source material can be played in this mode.

#### Notes:

- When you use this mode with certain DVD and CD players, performing operations such as skip or stop may momentarily interrupt the output.
- When the signal is not decoded, the mode is changed to AUTO mode automatically. See page 43 to confirm the available decoding modes.

#### THX CINEMA

THX Cinema mode applies additional processing to Dolby Digital, DTS and Dolby Pro Logic multichannel, surround sources. The THX processing was developed by Lucasfilm Ltd. to recreate the sound of top-quality theater.

Use the THX Cinema mode for all movies on disc, tape or broadcast. In this mode, the THX Surround EX mode is not available.

#### THX SURROUND EX

In a movie theater, film soundtracks that have been encoded with Dolby Digital Surround EX technology are able to reproduce an extra channel which has been added during the mixing of the program.

This channel, called Surround Back, places sounds behind the listener in addition to the currently available front left, front center, front right, surround right, surround left and subwoofer channels.

This additional channel provides the opportunity for more detailed imaging behind the listener and brings more depth, spacious ambience and sound localization than ever before.

THX Surround EX will operate for any 5.1 channel source whenever THX is active.

THX Surround EX is not available in system without surround back speaker(s).

#### Note:

 When playing Dolby Digital Surround EX-encoded software in 6.1 channels, it is required to select the THX Surround EX mode.

#### THX SELECT2 CINEMA

THX SELECT2 Cinema mode plays 5.1 movies using all 7.1 speakers giving you the best possible movie watching experience. In this mode, ASA processing blends the surround L/R speakers and surround back speakers, providing the optimal mix of ambient and directional surround sound.

This mode permits the playback of a non Surround EX/ES-encoded 5.1 movie over a 7.1 system.

DTS-ES (Matrix and 6.1 Discrete) and Dolby Digital Surround EX-encoded soundtracks will be automatically detected, if the appropriate flag has been encoded.

Some Dolby Digital Surround EX soundtracks are missing the digital flag that allows automatic switching.

If you know that the movie that you are watching is encoded in Surround EX, you can manually select the THX Surround EX playback mode, otherwise the THX SELECT2 Cinema mode will apply ASA processing to provide optimum replay.

#### THX MUSIC

For the replay of multichannel music, the THX Music mode should be selected. In this mode, THX ASA processing is applied to the surround channels of all 5.1-encoded music sources, such as DTS and Dolby Digital, to provide a wide, stable, rear soundstage.

This mode is to be used with multichannel music sources such as DTS 5.1 music and Dolby Digital 5.1 music.

#### Notes:

- These modes are only available when you have setup SPEAKER SIZE menu system (i.e. 2 surround back speakers).
- These modes are only available when the input signal has surround left and surround right contents.

#### THX GAMES

For the replay of stereo and multichannel game audio the THX Games mode should be selected. In this mode, THX ASA processing is applied to the surround channels of all 5.1 and 2.0-encoded game sources such as analog, PCM, DTS and Dolby Digital. This accurately places all game audio surround information, providing a full 360-degree playback environment. THX Games mode is unique as it gives you a smooth transition of audio in all points of the surround field.

#### DI MODE

### (Dolby Digital, Pro Logic IIx MOVIE, Pro Logic IIx MUSIC, Pro Logic IIx GAME)

This mode is used with source materials encoded in Dolby Digital and Dolby Surround.

#### **DOLBY DIGITAL**

This mode is enabled when playing source materials encoded in Dolby Digital.

Playing multichannel-encoded 5.1 channel Dolby Digital sources provides 5 main audio channels (left, center, right, surround left and surround right) and a Low Frequency Effect channel.

Dolby Digital EX decoding is not available in this mode.

Dolby Pro Logic IIx has 5 modes:

#### Pro Logic IIx MOVIE

This mode provides 6.1 or 7.1 channel surround sound from Dolby Surround, encoded stereo movie soundtracks.

#### **Pro Logic IIx MUSIC**

This mode provides 6.1 or 7.1 channel surround sound from conventional stereo sources (analog or digital), such as CD, tape, FM, TV, stereo VCR, etc.

#### **Pro Logic IIx GAME**

This mode restores the impact low-frequency surround effects by routing them to the system's subwoofer.

#### 5.1ch + Pro Logic IIx Movie

This mode provides 7.1 channel surround sound from 5.1 channel sources movie soundtracks.

#### 5.1ch + Pro Logic IIx Music

This mode provides 6.1 or 7.1 channel surround sound from 5.1 channel sources music soundtracks.

#### Notes:

- Pro Logic IIx mode will decode as Pro Logic II mode when the SURR. B is set to "NONE" from SPEAKER SETUP menu. (See page 30)
- Pro Logic IIx mode is available for a 2 channel input signal which is encoded in Dolby Digital, HDCD or PCM format.
- PCM audio signals can be subjected to Pro Logic IIx processing when the sampling frequency is 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz or 48 kHz.

#### EX/ES

This mode provides 6.1 channel surround for Dolby Digital EX, and DTS-ES-encoded source material such as DVD.

This mode cannot be used when an analog input has been selected.

#### Dolby Digital EX

In a movie theater, film soundtracks that have been encoded with Dolby Digital Surround EX technology are able to reproduce an extra channel which has been added during the mixing of the program.

This channel, called surround back, places sounds behind the listener in addition to the currently available front left, front center, front right, surround right, surround left and subwoofer channels.

This additional channel provides the opportunity for more detailed imaging behind the listener and brings more depth, spacious ambience and sound localization than ever before.

Dolby Digital EX is not available in systems that do not have without surround back speaker(s).

#### DTS-ES (Discrete 6.1, Matrix 6.1)

DTS-ES adds the surround center channel audio to the DTS 5.1 channel format to improve the acoustic positioning, and makes acoustic image movement more natural with the 6.1 channel reproduction.

The SR7001/SR8001 incorporates a DTS-ESdecoder, which can handle DTS-ES Discreteencoded and DTS-ES Matrix-encoded program sources from DVD, etc.

DTS-ES Discrete 6.1 features digital discrete recording of all channels, including the surround back channel(s), and higher quality audio reproduction. DTS-ES is not available in systems that do not have surround back speakers.

#### dts

dts. Neo:6 Cinema, Neo:6 Music

This mode is for DTS-encoded source materials such as laserdisc, CD and DVD. Neo:6 is for some 2 channel sources.

#### dts

This mode is enabled when playing source materials encoded in dts multichannel.

Playing multichannel encoded-5.1 channel dts sources provides five main audio channels (left, center, right, surround left and surround right) and a Low Frequency Effects channel.

dts-ES decoding is not available in this mode.

The DTS mode cannot be used when an analog input has been selected.

#### Neo:6 Cinema, Neo:6 Music

This mode decodes 2 channel signals into 6 channel signals using high-accuracy digital matrix technology. The DTS Neo:6 decoder has near-discrete properties in the frequency characteristics of the channels as well as in channel separation.

According to the signals to be played back, DTS Neo:6 uses either the Neo:6 Cinema mode optimized for movie playback or the Neo:6 Music mode optimized for music playback.

#### Notes:

- The Neo:6 mode is available for 2 channel input signals which are encoded in Dolby Digital, HDCD or PCM format.
- PCM audio signals can be subjected to Neo:6 processing when the sampling frequency is 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz or 48 kHz

#### MULTI CH. ST

This mode is used to create a wider, deeper and more natural soundstage from two channel source material. This is done by feeding the left channel signal to both the left front and left surround speakers and the right channel signal to both the right front and right surround speakers. Additionally, the center channel reproduces a mix of the right and left channels.

#### CIRCLE SURROUND II (CSII-CINEMA, CSII-MUSIC, CSII-MONO)

Circle Surround is designed to enable multichannel surround sound playback of non-encoded and multichannel encoded material.

Backward compatibility provides listeners with up to 6.1 channels of surround performance from an entire collection of music and film, including broadcast, videotape and stereo recorded music.

Depending on source material, you can select CSII-Cinema mode, CSII-Music mode or CSII-Mono mode.

#### Notes:

- The CS II mode is available for 2 channel input signals which are encoded in Dolby Digital, HDCD or PCM format.
- PCM audio signals can be subjected to CS II processing when the sampling frequency is 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz or 48 kHz.

#### **Dolby Virtual Speaker**

Dolby Virtual Speaker technology uses proprietary technology of Dolby Laboratories to create a virtual surround sound field using only two speakers for the front channels, allowing the user to experience sound as if surround speakers were actually being used.

#### **STEREO**

This mode bypasses all surround processing. In stereo program sources, the left and right channels play normally when PCM audio or analog stereo is input.

With Dolby Digital and DTS sources, the 5.1 channels are converted to two channel stereo. 96 kHz PCM source material can be played back in stereo mode.

#### CAUTION

#### Note for DTS

- To connected DVD player, laserdisc player or CD player needs to support DTS digital output. You may not be able to play some DTS source signals from certain CD players and LD players even if you connect the player to the SR7001/SR8001 digitally. This is because the digital signal has been processed (such as the output level, sampling frequency or frequency response), and the SR7001/SR8001 cannot recognize the signal as DTS data.
- Depending on the player used, DTS play may produce a short noise. This is not a malfunction.
- While signals from a DTS laserdisc or CD are playing in another surround mode, you cannot switch to digital input or from digital input to analog input from the INPUT SETUP in the MAIN MENU or by pressing the A/D button.
- You can not listen to DTS-encoded software in a multiroom.
- The outputs for VCR 1 OUT, DSS/VCR 2 OUT, TAPE OUT and CD-R OUT output analog audio signals only. Do not record from CDs or LDs that support DTS using these outputs. If you do, the DTS-encoded signal will be recorded as noise.

#### Note or Dolby Digital Surround EX

- When playing Dolby Digital Surround EX-encoded software in 6.1 channels, it is required to set the EX/ES mode.
- Note that some Dolby Digital Surround EX-encoded software does not contain the identification signal.
   In this case, set the EX/ES mode manually.

#### Note for 96 kHz/192 kHz PCM audio

- The AUTO, Pure Direct, and Stereo modes can be used when playing PCM signals with a sampling frequency of 96/192 kHz (such as from DVD-Video/ Audio discs).
- Certain DVD player models inhibit digital output. For details, refer to the player's operation manual.
- Some DVD discs feature copy protection. When using such disc, 96 kHz PCM signal are not output from the DVD player. For details, refer to the player's operation manual.

#### Note for HDCD

- · HDCD is effective only through digital input.
- You may not be able to play some HDCD source signals from certain CD players if you connect the player to the SR7001/SR8001 digitally. This is because the digital signal has been processed (such as the output level, sampling frequency or frequency response) and the SR7001/SR8001 cannot recognize the signal as HDCD data.

## The relationship between the selected surround mode and the input signal

The surround mode is selected with the surround mode selector on the SR7001 or the remote control unit. However, the sound you hear is subject to the relationship between the selected surround mode and the input signal. That relationship is as follows:

				Out	put Ch	annel		Front infor	mation display
Surround Mode	Input Signal	Decoding	L/R	С	SL SR	SBL SBR	SubW	Signal format indicators	Channel status
AUTO	Dolby Surr.EX	Dolby Digital EX	0	0	0	0	0	DID DIGITAL EX	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
	Dolby D (5.1ch)	Dolby Digital 5.1	Ŏ	0	0	-	0	DID DIGITAL	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Dolby D (2ch)	Dolby Digital 2.0	0	-	-	-	0	DIO DIGITAL	L, R
	Dolby D (2ch Surr)	Pro Logic IIx movie	0	0	0	0	00	DID DIGITAL DID SURROUND	L, R, S L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
	DTS-ES DTS 96/24	DTS-ES DTS-96/24	ő	0	ő	-	0	dts, ES dts 96/24	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
	DTS (5.1ch)	DTS 5.1	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	i -	0	dts	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Multi Ch-PCM	Multi Ch-PCM	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	-	ŏ	M-PCM	L C B SL SB LFF
	Multi Ch-PCM 96kHz	Multi Ch-PCM 96kHz	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	-	0	M-PCM	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (5.1ch)	Multi Ch-PCM	Ō	Ō	Ō	-	0	SA-CD	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (2ch)	PCM (Stereo)	0	-	-	-	0	SA-CD	L, R
	PCM (Audio)	PCM (Stereo)	0	-	-	-	0	PCM	L, R
	PCM 96kHz	PCM (Stereo 96kHz)	0	-	-	-	0	PCM	L, R
	HDCD	HDCD	0	-	-	-	0	PCM, HDCD	L, R
	Analog 7.1ch input	Stereo	0	- 0	-	- 0	00	ANALOG ANALOG	-
SOURCE DIRECT	Dolby Surr.EX	Multi Ch	8	Ö	0	0	0	DID DIGITAL EX	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
PURE DIRECT	Dolby D (5.1ch)	Dolby Digital EX Dolby Digital 5.1	ŏ	6	6	-	0	DID DIGITAL EX	L, C, R, SL, SR, SF, LFE
FUNE DINECT	Dolby D (3.1ch)	Dolby Digital 2.0	ŏ	1.	-	1	o	DID DIGITAL	L, R
	Dolby D (2ch Surr)	Pro Logic IIx movie	ŏ	0	0	0	ŏ	DID DIGITAL DID SURROUND	L, R, S
	DTS-ES	DTS-ES	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	Ŏ	dts, ES	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
	DTS 96/24	DTS-96/24	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	-	ŏ	dts 96/24	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	DTS (5.1ch)	DTS 5.1	0	0	0	-	0	dts	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Multi Ch-PCM	Multi Ch-PCM	0	0	0	-	0	M-PCM	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Multi Ch-PCM 96kHz	Multi Ch-PCM 96kHz	0	0	0	-	0	M-PCM	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (5.1ch)	SA-CD (5.1ch)	0	0	0	-	0	SA-CD	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (2ch)	SA-CD (2ch)	0	-	-	1-	0	SA-CD	L, R
	PCM (Audio) PCM 96kHz	PCM (Stereo) PCM (Stereo 96kHz)	0	-	-	-	-	PCM PCM	L, R L, R
	HDCD	HDCD	8	-	-	-	-	PCM, HDCD	L, R
	Analog	Stereo	8	-	-	-	-	ANALOG	L, N
	7.1ch input	Multi Ch	ŏ	0	0	0	0	ANALOG	1.
EX/ES	Dolby Surr.EX	Dolby Digital EX	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	DID DIGITAL EX	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
2,420	Dolby D (5.1ch)	Dolby Digital EX	Ŏ	Ŏ	Ŏ	Ŏ	Ö	DI DIGITAL	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	DTS-ES	DTS-ES	Ō	Ō	Ō	Ō	Ô	dts, ES	L C B SL SB S LFF
	DTS (5.1ch)	DTS-ES	0	0	0	0	0		L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	DTS (5.1ch) Multi-PCM	Multi Ch-PCM + Dolby EX	0	0	0	0	0	dts M-PCM	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (5.1ch)	Multi Ch-PCM + Dolby EX	0	0	0	0	0	SA-CD	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
DOLBY	Dolby Surr.EX	Dolby Digital 5.1	0	0	0	-	0	DICI DIGITAL EX	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
(PLIIx movie)	Dolby D (5.1ch)	Dolby Digital 5.1	0	0	0		0	DIC DIGITAL	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
(PLIIx music)	Dolby D (5.1ch)	Dolby Digital 5.1 + PLIIx	0	0	0	0	0	DI DIGITAL	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
(PLIIx game)	Dolby D (2ch)	Pro Logic IIx Pro Logic IIx	0	0	0	0	00	DICEDICATE	L, R L. R. S
	Dolby D (2ch Surr) Multi Ch-PCM	Multi Ch-PCM + PLIIX	0	0	ő	0	0	M-PCM	L, R, S L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (5.1ch)	Multi Ch-PCM + PLIIX	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	0	SA-CD	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (2ch)	Pro Logic IIx	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	SA-CD	L, R
	PCM (Audio)	Pro Logic IIx	Ö	Ŏ	Ö	Ŏ	0	PCM	L, R
	HDCD	Pro Logic IIx	0	0	0	0	0	PCM, HDCD	L, R
	Analog	Pro Logic IIx	0	0	0	0	0	ANALOG	-
DTS	DTS-ES	DTS 5.1	0	0	0	-	0	dts, ES	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
(Neo:6 Cinema)	DTS 96/24	DTS-96/24	0	0	0	-	0	dts 96/24	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
(Neo:6 Music)	DTS (5.1ch)	DTS 5.1	0	0	0	ļ .	0	dts	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Dolby D (2ch)	Neo:6	0	0	0	0	00	DID DIGITAL	L, R
	Dolby D (2ch Surr) SA-CD (2ch)	Neo:6 Neo:6	0	0	0	0	00	DICI DIGITAL DICI SURROUND SA-CD	L, R, S
	PCM(Audio)	Neo:6	ŏ	ő	6	ő	o	PCM	L, R
	HDCD	Neo:6	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	0	PCM, HDCD	L, R
	Analog	Neo:6	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ANALOG	-
CSII Cinema	Dolby D (2ch)	CSII	Ŏ	Ŏ	Ŏ	Ŏ	0	DID DIGITAL	L, R
CSII Music	Dolby D (2ch Surr)	CSII	0	0	0	0	0	DICI DIGITAL DICI SURROUND	L, R, S
CSII Mono	SA-CD (2ch)	CSII	0	0	0	0	0	SA-CD	L, R
	PCM(Audio)	CSII	0	0	0	0	0	PCM	L, R
	HDCD	CSII	0	0	0	0	0	PCM, HDCD	L, R
CTEDEO	Analog EV	CSII	0	0	0	0	0	ANALOG	- L C D CL CD C LEE
STEREO	Dolby Surr.EX Dolby D (5.1ch)	Stereo	0	1	-	-	00	DID DIGITAL EX	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Dolby D (5.1ch) Dolby D (2ch)	Stereo Stereo	0	-	-	-	00	DICIDIGITAL DICIDIGITAL	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Dolby D (2ch Surr)	Stereo	ñ	1.	-	1	ŏ	DID DIGITAL DID SURROUND	L. R. S
	DTS-ES	Stereo	ŏ	-	-	-	ŏ	dts, ES	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
	DTS 96/24	Stereo	0	-	-	-	0	dts 96/24	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	DTS (5.1ch)	Stereo	0	-	-	-	0	dts	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Multi Ch-PCM	Stereo	0	-	-	-	0	M-PCM	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Multi Ch-PCM 96kHz	Stereo	0	-	-	-	0	M-PCM	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (5.1ch)	Stereo	0	-	-	-	0	SA-CD	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (2ch)	Stereo	Ö	١.	-	-	0	SA-CD	L, R
	PCM (Audio)	Stereo	0	-	-	-	0	PCM	L, R
	PCM 96kHz	Stereo	0	-	-	-	0	PCM LIDOR	L, R
	HDCD	Stereo	0	-	-	-	0	PCM, HDCD	L, R
	Analog	Stereo	0	1 -	1 -	1 -	0	ANALOG	-

				Out	put Cha	annel		Fro	ont information display
Surround Mode	Input Signal	Decoding	L/R	С	SL SR	SBL SBR	SubW	Signal format indicators	Channel status
Dolby Virtual	Dolby Surr.EX	Dolby Virtual Speaker	0	-	-	-	-	DICI DIGITAL EX	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
Speaker	Dolby D (5.1ch)	Dolby Virtual Speaker	0	-	-	-	-	DID DIGITAL	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Dolby D (2ch)	Dolby Virtual Speaker	0	-	-	-	-	DICI DIGITAL	L, R
	Dolby D (2ch Surr)	Dolby Virtual Speaker	0	-	-	-	-	DIZI DIGITAL DIZI SURROUND	L, R, S
	DTS-ES	Dolby Virtual Speaker	0	-	-	-	-	dts, ES	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	DTS 96/24	Dolby Virtual Speaker	0	-	-	-	-	dts 96/24 dts	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	DTS (5.1ch) Multi Ch-PCM	Dolby Virtual Speaker Dolby Virtual Speaker	10	-	-	-	-	M-PCM	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (5.1ch)	Dolby Virtual Speaker	ŏ	-	1	-	-	SA-CD	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (3:1ch)	Dolby Virtual Speaker	lŏ	-	1	-	-	SA-CD	L. R
	PCM (Audio)	Dolby Virtual Speaker	ŏ	-	-	-	-	PCM	L.R
	HDCD	Dolby Virtual Speaker	Ŏ	-	-	-	-	PCM, HDCD	L.R
	Analog	Dolby Virtual Speaker	Ŏ	-	-	-	-	ANALOG	-
Multi Ch.	Dolby Surr.EX	Dolby Digital EX	0	0	0	0	0	DID DIGITAL EX	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
Stereo	Dolby D (5.1ch)	Dolby Digital 5.1	0	0	0	-	0	DID DIGITAL	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Dolby D (2ch)	Multi Channel Stereo	0	0	0	0	0	DIC DIGITAL	L, R
	Dolby D (2ch Surr)	Multi Channel Stereo	0	0	0	0	0	DICI DIGITAL DICI SURROUND	L, R, S
	DTS-ES	DTS-ES	0	0	0	0	0	dts, ES	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
	DTS 96/24	DTS-96/24	O	0	0	-	0	dts 96/24	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	DTS (5.1ch)	DTS 5.1	0	0	0	-	0	dts	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Multi Ch-PCM	Multi Ch-PCM	0	0	0	-	0	M-PCM	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Multi Ch-PCM 96kHz	Multi Ch-PCM 96kHz	0		0	-	0	M-PCM	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (5.1ch) SA-CD (2ch)	Multi Ch-PCM Multi Channel Stereo	0	0	0	- 0	0	SA-CD SA-CD	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	PCM (Audio)	Multi Channel Stereo	ŏ	ŏ	0	ŏ	ŏ	PCM	L.R
	HDCD HDCD	Multi Channel Stereo	lŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	PCM, HDCD	L.B
	Analog	Multi Channel Stereo	lŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ANALOG	-
Dolby H.P	Dolby Surr.EX	Dolby H.P	Ŏ		-			DID DIGITAL EX	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
	Dolby D (5.1ch)	Dolby H.P	0	-	-	-	-	DICI DIGITAL	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Dolby D (2ch)	Dolby H.P	0	-	-	-	-	DID DIGITAL	L, R
	Dolby D (2ch Surr)	Dolby H.P	0	-	-	-	-	DID DIGITAL DID SURROUND	L, R, S
	DTS-ES	Dolby H.P	0	-	-	-	-	dts, ES	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
	DTS 96/24	Dolby H.P	0	-	-	-	-	dts 96/24	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	DTS (5.1ch)	Dolby H.P	0	-	-	-	-	dts	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Multi Ch-PCM	Dolby H.P	0	-	-	-	-	M-PCM	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (5.1ch) SA-CD (2ch)	Dolby H.P Dolby H.P	0	-	-	-	-	SA-CD SA-CD	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	PCM (Audio)	Dolby H.P	10	-	1	-	-	PCM	L.R
	HDCD	Dolby H.P	lŏ	<u> </u>	i i	<u> </u>	-	PCM, HDCD	L.B
	Analog	Dolby H.P	lŏ		-		-	ANALOG	
THX	Dolby Surr.EX	Dolby Digital + THX Surround EX	Ιŏ	0	0	0	0	DID DIGITAL EX	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
(THX Games)	Dolby D (5.1ch)	Dolby Digital 5.1+ THX 5.1	Ŏ	Ō	Ō		Ō	DID DIGITAL	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
(	Dolby D (2ch)	Pro Logic IIx movie + THX	0	0	0	0	0	DID DIGITAL	L, R
	Dolby D (2ch Surr)	Pro Logic IIx movie + THX	0	0	0	0	0	DICI DIGITAL DICI SURROUND	L, R, S
	DTS-ES	DTS-EŠ + THX	0	0	0	0	0	dts, ES	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
	DTS (5.1ch)	DTS + THX 5.1	0	0	0	-	0	dts	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Multi Ch-PCM	Multi Ch-PCM + THX5.1	0	0	0	-	0	M-PCM	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (5.1ch) SA-CD (2ch)	Multi Ch-PCM + THX5.1	0	0	0	-	0	SA-CD SA-CD	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	PCM (Audio)	Pro Logic IIx movie + THX	0		0	0		PCM	L, R
	HDCD	Pro Logic IIx movie + THX Pro Logic IIx movie + THX	18	0	8	0	0	PCM. HDCD	L, R
	Analog	Pro Logic IIX movie + THX Pro Logic IIX movie + THX	18	0	0	8	8	ANALOG	<u></u>
THX Select2	Dolby Surr.EX	Dolby Digital + THX Surround EX	0	0	0	0	0	DID DIGITAL EX	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
(THX EX)	Dolby D (5.1ch)	Dolby Digital + THX Sulfound EX  Dolby Digital 5.1+ THX Select2 Cinema	16	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	DI DIGITAL EX	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
(THX LX)	Dolby D (3.1ch)	Pro Logic IIx movie + THX	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	DID DIGITAL	L, R
(THX Music)	Dolby D (2ch Surr)	Pro Logic IIx movie + THX	Ĭŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	DID DIGITAL DID SURROUND	L. R. S
(	DTS-ES	DTS-EŠ + THX	0	0	0	0	0	dts, ES	L, C, R, SL, SR, S, LFE
	DTS (5.1ch)	DTS + THX Select2 Cinema	Ŏ	0	Ŏ	Ö	0	dts	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	Multi Ch-PCM	Multi Ch-PCM + THX Select2 Cinema	0	0	0	0	0	M-PCM	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (5.1ch)	Multi Ch-PCM + THX Select2 Cinema	0	0	0	0	0	SA-CD	L, C, R, SL, SR, LFE
	SA-CD (2ch)	Pro Logic IIx movie + THX	0	0	0	0	0	SA-CD	L, R
	PCM (Audio)	Pro Logic IIx movie + THX	0	0	0	0	0	PCM	L, R
	HDCD	Pro Logic IIx movie + THX	Ŏ	Ö	Ö	Ö	Ŏ	PCM, HDCD	L, R
	Analog	Pro Logic IIx movie + THX	0	0	0	0	0	ANALOG	-

/4/4

#### Notes:

- Dolby Digital (2 channel L/R): Speakers for signal with Dolby Surround are fully equipped.
- No sound is outputs from the surround speaker, center speaker and subwoofer if the DVD disc has no surround data.

#### Abbreviations

L/R: Front speakers
C: Center speaker
SL/SR: Surround speakers
SBL/SBR: Surround back speakers

SubW : Subwoofer

### OTHER FUNCTION

#### TV AUTO ON/OFF FUNCTION

This function allows the component connected to the TV-VIDEO in jack to control the power (ON/OFF) to the SR7001.

#### **AUTO POWER ON**

- Be sure the TV auto mode is ENABLED. (Refer to page 34: PREFERENCE)
- Connect your TV TUNER (etc) to the TV-VIDEO in terminal. Be sure to connect the VIDEO input.
- 3. Turn OFF the power to the TV TUNER and the SR7001
- **4.** Turn ON the TV TUNER and tune in a receivable station.
- When the station is received, the SR7001 turns ON and TV is selected automatically.

#### **AUTO POWER OFF**

- In the above situation, turn the TV TUNER OFF or select a channel that does not contain any broadcast
- **2.** The power to the SR7001 switches to STANDBY after approx. 5 minutes.

#### Notes:

- AUTO POWER OFF is canceled if the SR7001 is set to a source other than TV.
- The function reactivates when TV is selected again.
- Some TV broadcasts may cause the TV AUTO FUNCTION to turn ON.
- The S-Video terminal does not support "TV AUTO ON/OFF" function.

#### ATTENUATION TO ANALOG INPUT SIGNAL



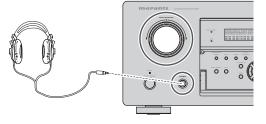
If the selected analog audio input signal is greater than the capable level of internal processing, the "PEAK" indicator will light up on the front display. If this happens, you should press the ATT button on the remote.

"ATT" indicator will be illuminated when this function is activated. The signal-input level is reduced by about half. Attenuation will not work with the output signal of TAPE-OUT, CD/CD-R, VCR1-OUT and DSS/VCR2-OUT.

This function is memorized for each individual input source.

#### LISTENING THROUGH HEADPHONES

This jack may be used to listen to the SR7001's output through a pair of headphones. Be certain that the headphones have a standard 1/4" stereo phono plug. (Note that the speakers will automatically be turned off when the headphone jack is in use.)



#### Note:

• The surround mode returns to the previous setting as soon as the plug is removed from the jack.

#### **DOLBY HEADPHONE MODE**

This feature simulates the waveforms of the actual sounds heard from the speakers.

When headphones are used, the **MENU** button automatically switches to the Dolby headphone mode.

The OSD that appears when the **MENU** button is pressed is shown below.



DOLBY HP (Headphone) MODE can be selected with the left and right cursor buttons.

BYPASS → DH (DOLBY Headphone) → BYPASS

BYPASS: Bypasses the Dolby headphone mode and delivers ordinary 2-channel stereo.

DH: Dolby Headphone is a signal processing system that delivers a sound similar to room speakers.

It makes it possible to experience the volume and space of a 5-channel surround system using ordinary stereo headphones.

When the PURE DIRECT mode is selected, Dolby surround processing is bypassed and "\*\*\*" is displayed as the mode indication.

The surround mode can be selected when the modes in DH is selected.

L/R LEVEL can be set in the ±12 dB range.

#### Notes:

- The surround mode returns to the previous setting as soon as the plug is removed from the jack.
- TONE cannot be set when the mode in DH is selected.
- The Dolby Headphone function will not work when 32 or 96 kHz PCM digital signals are input.

#### **VIDEO ON/OFF**

When no video signal is connected to the SR7001 or a DVD, etc., is connected directly to your TV, the unnecessary video circuit can be turned off by selecting the "VIDEO OFF" setting.

To select video off, press the **AMP** button and press the > button until PAGE 4 is displayed. Press the **V-OFF** button.





#### **DISPLAY MODE**





You can select the display mode for the front display of the SR7001.

To select this mode, press the **DISPLAY** on the remote control or the front panel.

When this button is pressed, the display mode is switched in the following sequence.

Input Mode → Surround Mode → Auto display OFF → Display OFF → Normal Mode → Input Mode

#### **Normal Mode:**

Displays the selected input function. If the function has been renamed using the Function Rename feature (see page 25), the renamed name appears on the display.

#### Input Mode:

Displays the input mode set via the Function Input Setup feature (see page 24).

#### Surround Mode:

Displays the status of the selected surround mode.

#### Auto Display Off mode:

The display is off. But, if you make a change to the unit such as the input or surround mode, the display will show that change, then go back to off after about 3 seconds. When changing the volume, it is not displayed.

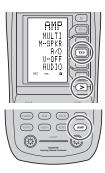
#### Display Off mode:

The display is off completely.

#### Note:

• Only the DISP indicator will be illuminated on the front display in display off condition.

### SELECTING ANALOG AUDIO INPUT OR DIGITAL AUDIO INPUT



If you have already assigned the digital inputs, you can temporarily select the audio input mode for each input source as following procedures.

Press the **AMP** button and press the > button until PAGE4 is displayed. Press the **A/D (D3)** button.

When this button is pressed, the input mode is switched in the following sequence.

Auto → HDMI → Digital → Analog → Auto

#### Auto mode:

The types of signals being input to the digital and analog input jacks for the selected input source are detected automatically.

If no digital signal is being input, the analog input jacks are selected automatically.

#### HDMI mode:

HDMI mode can be selected only when an HDMI input has been assigned as an input source.

When "HDMI AUDIO" under PREFERENCE of the SETUP MENU is set to "THROUGH", the HDMI mode cannot be selected.

#### Digital mode:

The input signal is fixed to an assigned digital input terminal.

#### Analog mode:

The analog input jacks are selected.

This selection is temporary and will not be stored in memory.

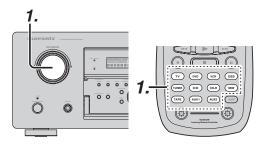
To store changes to the input mode, select "1. INPUT SETUP" from the MAIN MENU. (See page 24)

#### **RECORDING AN ANALOG SOURCE**

In normal operation, the audio or video source selected for listening through the SR7001 is sent to the record outputs.

This means that any program you are watching or listening to may be recorded simply by placing machines connected to the outputs for TAPE OUT, CD/CDR OUT, VCR1 OUT, and DSS/VCR2 OUT in the record mode.

### To record the input source signal you are currently watching or listening to



 Select the input source to record by turning the INPUT FUNCTION SELECTOR knob on the front panel or simply press the input selector buttons on the remote.

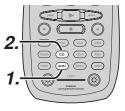
The input source is now selected and you may watch or listen to it as desired.

- The currently selected input source signal is output to the TAPE OUT, CD/CDR OUT, VCR1 OUT, and DSS/VCR2 OUT outputs for recording.
- **3.** Start recording to the recording component as desired.

### Recording the video from one source and the audio from another

You can add the sound from one source to the video of another source to make your own video recordings.

Below is an example of recording the sound from a compact disc player connected to CD IN and the video from a video camera connected to VCR1 to video cassette recorder connected to the DSS/VCR2 OUT jack.



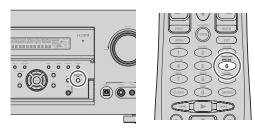
- Switch the video output source to VCR1 by simply pressing the input selector buttons on the remote.
- Switch the audio input source to CD by simply pressing the input selector buttons on the remote
- Now "CD" has been selected as the audio input source and "VCR1" as the video input source.

#### Notes:

- If you change the input source during recording, you will record the signals from the newly selected input source.
- You cannot record the surround effects.
- Digital input signals are only output to the digital outputs. There is no conversion from digital to analog.

When connecting CD players and other digital components, do not connect only the digital terminals, but the analog ones as well.

#### SPEAKER A/B



SR7001 has speaker system - A and speaker system- B for front L/R channels.

You can select these systems by pressing SPEAKERS A/B button on the front panel or SPK-AB on the remote.

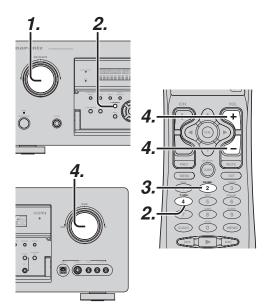
#### 7.1 CH INPUT

The SR7001 is equipped for future expansion through the use of Multi channel Super Audio CD multichannel player or DVD-Audio player.

When this is selected, the input signals connected to the L(front left), R (front right), CENTER, SL (surround left), SR (surround right) and SBL (surround back left) and SBR (surround back right) channels of the 7.1 CH. In jacks are output directly to the front (left and right), center, surround (left and right) and surround back speaker systems as well as the pre-out jacks without passing through the surround circuitry.

In addition, the signal input to the SW (subwoofer) jack is output to the PRE OUT SW (subwoofer) jack. When 7.1 CH. INPUT is selected, the last video input used remains routed to the **Monitor Outputs**.

This permits simultaneous viewing with video sources



- Select a desired Video source to decide the routed video signal to the Monitor Outputs.
- Press the 7.1 CH INPUT button on the front panel or press 7.1 CH on the remote to switch the 7.1 channel input.
- If it is necessary to adjust the output level of each channel, press the CH.SEL button on the remote.

Adjust the speaker output levels so that you can hear the same sound level from each speaker at the listening position. For the front left, front right, center, surround left, surround right and surround back speakers, the output levels can be adjusted between –12 to +12 dB.

The subwoofer can be adjusted between -18 and +12 dB.

These adjustments result will be stored to 7.1 CH. INPUT memory.

**4.** Adjust the main volume with the **MAINVOLUME** knob or the **VOL** buttons on the remote.

To cancel the 7.1 CH. INPUT setting, press the 7.1 CH INPUT button on the front panel or press 7.1 CH on the remote.

#### Notes:

- When the 7.1 CH. Input is in use, you may not select a surround mode, as the external decoder determines processing.
- In addition, there is no signal at the record outputs when the 7.1 CH. Input is in use.

#### **AUX2 INPUT**

If you don't need to connect 7.1 Ch. input terminals with multi channel decoder,

L(front left) and R (front right) inputs terminals are available as AUX2 input.

In this case, You can connect additional audio source to AUX2 as other audio input terminals.



#### LIP.SYNC

Depending on the image device (TV, monitor, projector, etc.) connected to the SR7001, a time lag can occur between image signal processing and audio signal processing. Though minor, this time lag can interfere with movie and music enjoyment. The LIP.SYNC feature delays the audio signal with respect to the image signal output from the SR7001 to correct the time lag between the sound and image. It can be operated with the "LIP.SYNC" and ◀ and ▶ cursor buttons of the remote controller. Set the remote controller to the AMP mode before operating the LIP.SYNC feature. The initial setting is OFF (0 ms).The time lag can be adjusted in 10 ms steps up to 200 ms.

Watch the picture on the image device (i.e., TV, monitor, projector, etc.) as you adjust the time lag.

#### Note:

 The LIP.SYSNC feature turns OFF (0 ms) in the SOURCE/PURE DIRECT mode. When the SOURCE/PURE DIRECT mode is deactivated, the set value of the LIP.SYSNC feature is automatically restored.



# BASIC OPERATION (TUNER)

To operate the unit from the remote control, press the **TUNER** button on the remote control so that the tuner mode is engaged.

#### LISTENING TO THE TUNER

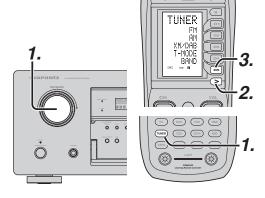
Frequency scan step for AM is selectable.

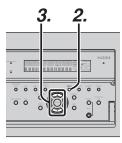
Default setup is 10 kHz step, if your country's standard is 9 kHz step, Press **BAND** button on the front panel or **TUNER** button on the remote more than 5 seconds. Scan step will change.

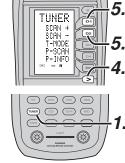
#### Note:

• Preset memory for the tuner will clear by changing this setup.

#### **AUTO TUNING**







#### (Using the SR7001)

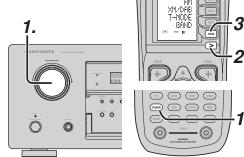
- Turn the INPUT SELECTOR knob to select "TUNER".
- Press the BAND button to select either FM or AM.
- **3.** Press the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons on the front Panel for more than 1 second to start the auto tuning function.
- **4.** Automatic searching begins then stops when a station is tuned in.

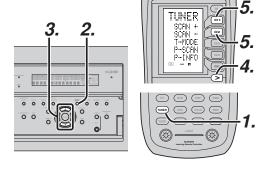
#### (Using the remote control unit)

- To select tuner, Press the TUNER button twice within two second on the remote.
- Press the > button until PAGE 1 is displayed.
- Press the BAND (D5) button to select either FM or AM.
- Press the > button until PAGE 2 is displayed.
- 5. Press and hold the SCAN+ (D1) or SCAN- (D2) button for 1 second or more.
- **6.** Automatic searching begins then stops when a station is tuned in.

If tuning does not stop at the desired station, use to the "Manualtunin" operation.

#### **MANUAL TUNING**





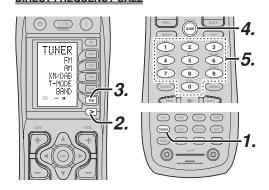
#### (Using the SR7001)

- Turn the INPUT SELECTOR knob to select "TUNER".
- Press the BAND button to select either FM or AM.
- **3.** Press the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons on the front Panel to select the desired station.

#### (Using the remote control unit)

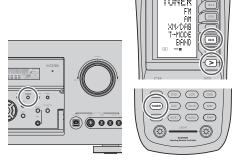
- To select tuner, press the TUNER button twice within two seconds on the remote.
- 2. Press the > button until PAGE 1 is displayed.
- **3.** Press the **BAND** (**D5**) button to select either FM or AM.
- **4.** Press the > button until PAGE 2 is displayed.
- **5.** Press the SCAN+ (D1) or SCAN- (D2) button to tune in the deseired station.

#### DIRECT FREQUENCY CALL



- To select tuner, Press the TUNER button twice within two seconds on the remote.
- Press the > button until PAGE 1 isdisplayed.
- Press the BAND (D5) button to select either FM or AM.
- Press the GUIDE on the remote, display will show "FREQ----".
- **5.** Input your desired station's, frequency with the ten numbered keypad on the remote.
- 6. The desired station will automatically be tuned.

#### (FM) TUNING MODE (AUTO STEREO OR MONO)



When in the auto stereo mode, **AUTO** indicator will be illuminated on the display.

The "ST" indicator is illuminated when a stereo broadcast is tuned in.

At open frequencies, the noise is muted and the "TUNED" and "ST" indicators are not illuminated.

If the signal is weak, it may be difficult to tune into the station in stereo. In such a case, Press the **MODE** button on the front panel. Or press the **TUNER** button and press the > button until PAGE 1 is displayed. Press the **T-MODE** (**D4**) button.

"AUTO" indicator is not illuminated, if FM stereo broadcasts are received in monaural and the "ST" indicator is not illuminated.

To return to auto stereo mode, Press the **MODE** button or Press **T-MODE** button on the remote again. **AUTO** indicator is illuminated the display.

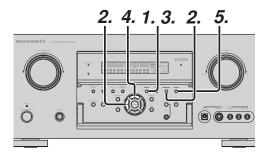
#### PRESET MEMORY

With this unit you can preset up to 60 FM/AM stations in any order.

For each station, you can memorize the frequency and reception mode if desired.

#### **AUTO PRESET MEMORY**

This function automatically scans the FM and AM band and enters all stations with proper signal strength into the memory.



- To select FM , press the BAND button on the front panel.

"AUTO PRESET" will appear on the display, and scanning starts from the lowest frequency.

Each time the tuner finds a station, scanning will pause and the station will be played for five seconds.

During this time, the following operations are possible.

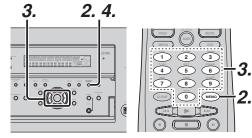
The band can be changed by the **BAND** button.

**4.** If no button is pressed during this period, the current station is memorized in location Preset

If you wish to skip the current station, press the cursor button during this period, this station is skipped and auto presetting continues.

5. Operation stops automatically when all 50 preset memory positions are filled or when auto scanning attains the highest end of all bands. If you desire to stop the auto preset memory at anytime, press the CLEAR button.

#### MANUAL PRESET MEMORY



#### (Using the SR7001)

- Tune into the radio station you desire (Refer to the "MANUAL TUNING" or "AUTO TUNING" section).
- Press the MEMORY button on the front panel.
   "--" (preset number) starts blinking on the display.
- Select the preset number by pressing the 

  or 

  or 

  cursor buttons, while this is still blinking
  (approx. 5 seconds)
- **4.** Press the **MEMORY** button again to enter. The display stops blinking.

The station is now stored in the specified preset memory location.

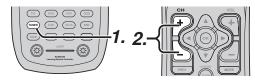
#### (Using the remote control unit)

- Tune into the radio station you desire (Refer to the "MANUAL TUNING" or "AUTO TUNING" section).
- Press the MEMO button on the remote. "--" (preset number) starts blinking on the display.
- Enter the desired preset number by pressing the numeric buttons.

#### Note:

 When entering a single digit number (2 for example), either input "02" or just input "2" and wait for a few seconds.

#### RECALLING A PRESET STATION



#### (Using the SR7001)

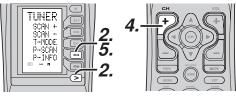
 Select the desired preset station by pressing the ◀ or ▶ cursor buttons on the front panel.

#### (Using the remote control unit)

- Press the TUNER button twice within two seconds on the remote.
- 2. Press the > button until PAGE4 is displayed
- **3.** Press the P-SET+ (D4) or P-SET- (D5) button to tune in the deseired preset station.

Or enter the preset station number with the numeric buttons.

#### PRESET SCAN





#### (Using the remote control unit)

- Press the TUNER button twice within two seconds on the remote.
- Press the > button until PAGE2 is displayed and press the P-SCAN (D4) on the remote.
  - "PRESET SCAN" appears on the front display and then the preset station with the lowest preset number is recalled first.
- 3. Preset stations are recalled in sequence (No.1 → No.2 → etc.) for 5 seconds each.

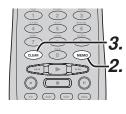
No stored preset number will be skipped.

- 4. You can fast forward the preset stations, press the > button until PAGE4 is displayed and press the P-SET+ (D4) continuously.
- 5. When the desired preset station is received, cancel the preset scan operation by pressing the CLEAR button or P-SCAN (D4) on the remote.

#### **CLEARING STORED PRESET STATIONS**

You can remove preset stations from the memory using the following procedure.





- Recall the preset number to be cleared with the method described in "Recalling" a preset station.
- Press the MEMORY button on the front panel or press the MEMO button on the remote.
- 3. The stored preset number blinks in the display for 5 seconds. While blinking, press the CLEAR button on the front panel or the remote.
- "xx CLEAR" appears on the display to indicate that the specified preset number has been cleared.

#### Note:

 To clear all stored preset stations, press and hold the CLEAR and the ENTER buttons for two seconds.

#### **SORTING PRESET STATIONS**



If you have stations memorized, and there is a gap in the sequential order:

I.e. the stations are stored as follows

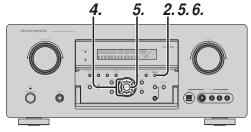
- 1) 87.1 MHz
- 2) 93.1 MHz
- 3) 94.7 MHz
- 10) 105.9 MHz

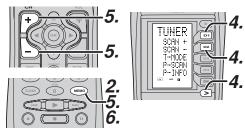
(notice there is no stations programmed for pre sets for 4-9), you can have pre set 10 become pre set 5: To sort the numbers, press and hold the **MEMORY** and the ▼ cursor buttons.

"PRESET SORT" will appear on the display and sorting will be done.

#### NAME INPUT OF THE PRESET STATION.

This function allows the name of each preset channel to be entered using alphanumeric characters. Before name inputting, you need to store preset stations with the preset memory operation.





- Recall the preset number to be inputted name with the method described in "Recalling" a preset station.
- Press the MEMORY button on the front panel or press the MEMO button on the remote for more than 3 seconds.
- The left most column of the station name indicator flashes, indicating the character entry ready status.
- 4. When you press the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons on the front panel or the SCAN+ or SCAN- buttons on the remote control unit (page 4), alphabetic and numeric characters will be displayed in the following order:

$$A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \dots Z \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow 2 \rightarrow 3 \dots 0 \rightarrow - \rightarrow + \rightarrow / \rightarrow (Blank) \rightarrow A$$

$$UP \rightarrow \rightarrow DOWN$$

After selecting the first character to be entered, press the MEMORY or ENTER button, or press the MEMO button on the remote.

The entry in this column is fixed and the next column starts to flash. Fill the next column the same way.

To move back and forth between the characters, press the ◀/► cursor buttons or press CH+ or CH− button on the remote.

#### Note:

- Unused columns should be filled by entering blanks.
- 6. To save the name, press the MEMORY or ENTER button on the front panel, or press the MEMO button on the remote for more than 2 seconds.

Instead of using the ▲ and ▼ cursor buttons or the SCAN+ and SCAN- buttons of the remote controller unit to select characters, characters can be input from the numeric keys of the remote control unit. See the below table for a correspondence between characters and numeric keys.

Ten keypad	Press, press again, press again, etc.	
1	$A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow A$	
2	$D \to E \to F \to 2 \to D$	
3	$G \rightarrow H \rightarrow I \rightarrow 3 \rightarrow G$	
4	$J \rightarrow K \rightarrow L \rightarrow 4 \rightarrow J$	
5	$M \rightarrow N \rightarrow O \rightarrow 5 \rightarrow M$	
6	$P \rightarrow Q \rightarrow R \rightarrow 6 \rightarrow P$	
7	$S \rightarrow T \rightarrow U \rightarrow 7 \rightarrow S$	
8	$V \rightarrow W \rightarrow X \rightarrow 8 \rightarrow V$	
9	$Y \rightarrow Z \rightarrow \text{space} \rightarrow 9 \rightarrow Y$	
0	$- \rightarrow + \rightarrow / \rightarrow 0$	

#### **RDS OPERATION**

Now in use in many countries, RDS (Radio Data System) is a description of the station's programming hidden space in the FM signal.

Your new receiver is equipped with RDS to assist in the selection of FM stations using station and network names, rather than broadcast frequencies. Additional RDS functions include the ability to search for programme types.

#### **RADIO TEXT**

Some RDS stations broadcast RADIO TEXT, which is additional information on the station and programme being broadcast.

RADIO TEXT information appears as 'running' text in the display. RADIO TEXT is transmitted character by the radio station. As a result of that it may take some time until the entire text has been completely received.

#### **RDS DISPLAY**

When a receiver is tuned to an FM station that is transmitting RDS data, the Front Panel Information Display will automatically show the station name or RDS TEXT in place of the typical display of the station's broadcast frequency.

To change the display, press the **TUNER** button and press the the > button until PAGE3 is displayed. Press the **DISP** (**D1**) button.





#### PROGRAMME TYPE (PTY) DISPLAY

The RDS system categorizes programmes according to their genre into different programme type (PTY) groups. To display the programme type information of the current station, press the **TUNER** button and press the the > button until PAGE3 is displayed. Press the **PTY (D2)** button.

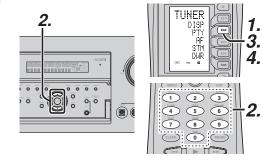




 $PS (Program Service Name) \longrightarrow RT (RADIO TEXT) \longrightarrow Frequency$ 

#### PTY AUTO SEARCH

Your receiver is equipped to automatically search for stations transmitting any of 29 different programme types. To search for a PTY, follow these procedures:



- Press the PTY button in the TUNER MODE on the remote controller. The current station's PTY will be displayed, or the currently selected PTY group will be displayed in blinking if no station or RDS data is present.
- To change to a new PTY type, press the TUNING ▲ or ▼ button on the front panel or numeric buttons on the remote until the desired PTY is shown in the display.
- 3. Once the desired PTY group or type has been selected, press the PTY button while the display blink (approx. 5 seconds). The PTY Auto search will start, and the tuner will pause at each station broadcasting RDS PTY information corresponding to the selected choice.
- To advance to the next RDS station with the desired PTY, press the PTY button again within 5 seconds.

NUMBER         DISPLAY         PROGRAMME TYPE           1         POP         Pop Music           2         ROCK         Rock Music           3         MOR         M. O. R. Music           4         LIGHT         Light classical           5         CLASSIC         Serious classical           6         NEWS         News           7         AFFAIR         Current Affairs           8         INFO         Information           9         SPORT         Sport           10         EDUCATE         Education           11         DRAMA         Drama           12         CULTURE         Culture           13         SCIENCE         Science           14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVE			
2         ROCK         Rock Music           3         MOR         M. O. R. Music           4         LIGHT         Light classical           5         CLASSIC         Serious classical           6         NEWS         News           7         AFFAIR         Current Affairs           8         INFO         Information           9         SPORT         Sport           10         EDUCATE         Education           11         DRAMA         Drama           12         CULTURE         Culture           13         SCIENCE         Science           14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ	NUMBER	DISPLAY	PROGRAMME TYPE
3         MOR         M. O. R. Music           4         LIGHT         Light classical           5         CLASSIC         Serious classical           6         NEWS         News           7         AFFAIR         Current Affairs           8         INFO         Information           9         SPORT         Sport           10         EDUCATE         Education           11         DRAMA         Drama           12         CULTURE         Culture           13         SCIENCE         Science           14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY	1	POP	Pop Music
4         LIGHT         Light classical           5         CLASSIC         Serious classical           6         NEWS         News           7         AFFAIR         Current Affairs           8         INFO         Information           9         SPORT         Sport           10         EDUCATE         Education           11         DRAMA         Drama           12         CULTURE         Culture           13         SCIENCE         Science           14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION <td>2</td> <td>ROCK</td> <td>Rock Music</td>	2	ROCK	Rock Music
5         CLASSIC         Serious classical           6         NEWS         News           7         AFFAIR         Current Affairs           8         INFO         Information           9         SPORT         Sport           10         EDUCATE         Education           11         DRAMA         Drama           12         CULTURE         Culture           13         SCIENCE         Science           14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES <td>3</td> <td>MOR</td> <td>M. O. R. Music</td>	3	MOR	M. O. R. Music
6         NEWS         News           7         AFFAIR         Current Affairs           8         INFO         Information           9         SPORT         Sport           10         EDUCATE         Education           11         DRAMA         Drama           12         CULTURE         Culture           13         SCIENCE         Science           14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music	4	LIGHT	Light classical
7         AFFAIR         Current Affairs           8         INFO         Information           9         SPORT         Sport           10         EDUCATE         Education           11         DRAMA         Drama           12         CULTURE         Culture           13         SCIENCE         Science           14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music	5	CLASSIC	Serious classical
8         INFO         Information           9         SPORT         Sport           10         EDUCATE         Education           11         DRAMA         Drama           12         CULTURE         Culture           13         SCIENCE         Science           14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music	6	NEWS	News
9         SPORT         Sport           10         EDUCATE         Education           11         DRAMA         Drama           12         CULTURE         Culture           13         SCIENCE         Science           14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music	7	AFFAIR	Current Affairs
10         EDUCATE         Education           11         DRAMA         Drama           12         CULTURE         Culture           13         SCIENCE         Science           14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	8	INFO	Information
11         DRAMA         Drama           12         CULTURE         Culture           13         SCIENCE         Science           14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	9	SPORT	Sport
12         CULTURE         Culture           13         SCIENCE         Science           14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	10	EDUCATE	Education
13         SCIENCE         Science           14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	11	DRAMA	Drama
14         OTHERS         Varied           15         OTHER         Other Music           16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	12	CULTURE	Culture
15	13	SCIENCE	Science
16         WEATHER         Weather           17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	14	•	Varied
17         FINANCE         Finance           18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	15	OTHER	Other Music
18         CHILDREN         Children's programmes           19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	16	WEATHER	Weather
19         SOCIAL         Social Affairs           20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	17	FINANCE	Finance
20         RELIGION         Religion           21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	18	CHILDREN	Children's programmes
21         PHONE IN         Phone In           22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	19	SOCIAL	Social Affairs
22         TRAVEL         Travel           23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	20	RELIGION	Religion
23         HOBBIES         Hobbies           24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	21		
24         JAZZ         Jazz Music           25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	22	TRAVEL	Travel
25         COUNTRY         Country Music           26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	23	HOBBIES	Hobbies
26         NATION         National Music           27         OLDIES         Oldies Music           28         FOLK         Folk Music	24	JAZZ	***************************************
27 OLDIES Oldies Music 28 FOLK Folk Music	25	COUNTRY	Country Music
28 FOLK Folk Music	26	NATION	National Music
	27	OLDIES	Oldies Music
	28	FOLK	Folk Music
29 DOCUMENT Documentary	29	DOCUMENT	Documentary

### MULTI ROOM SYSTEM

The Multiroom System mode allows the same source or different sources to be heard in two rooms other than where this receiver is installed.

To use the multiroom system, connect the audio from the MULTI OUT A and B AUDIO output terminals to the MULTI ROOM A and B amps.

#### Note:

• The SR7001 does not have a MULTI ROOM B setting.

Connect the VIDEO output (MULTI OUT) terminal to the monitor in Room A.

(MULTI VIDEO OUT terminal is linked to the source selector in Multi Room A.)

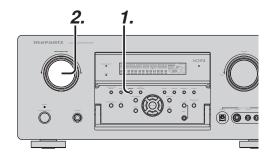
If a surround channel back speaker or speaker C (see page 19) are not used in the room where this receiver is installed, the multi speaker system can be used with the amp for the surround back channel.

Also, the COMPONENT VIDEO MONITOR OUT 2 terminal can be used for the monitor output of Room  $_{\Delta}$ 

(This feature cannot be used with the SR7001.)

This receiver supports multiroom system functions such as source selectors, OSD menu systems, sleep timers and remote control.

### MULTI ROOM PLAYBACK USING THE MULTI ROOM OUT TERMINALS



- Pressing the MULTI button on the receiver one time accesses the MULTI ROOM A settings. Pressing it two times accesses the MULTI ROOM B settings. Then, pressing it a third time turns the multiroom feature off. (The SR7001 does not have a MULTI ROOM B setting.)
- When the MULTI ROOM setting mode is engaged, one of the following screens appears on the display for 10 seconds.

#### - SR8001 -

\* Display when MULTI ROOM A is selected



\* Display when MULTI ROOM B is selected



#### - SR7001 -

The unit enters multi room mode and the display indicates "SELECT SOURCE" and flashes the "MULTI" indicator for approx. 10 seconds.

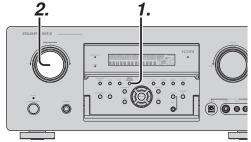
- Select an input source with the INPUT SELECTOR knob.
- 4. Turn the VOLUME knob to set the volume of the room used in the multi room system as you like.

#### Note:

• The sleep timer, monaural output and other features can also be set using the MAIN MENU. (See page 36)

#### MULTI ROOM PLAYBACK USING THE MULTI SPEAKER TERMINALS

The SR7001 allows you to connect another set of speakers and place them in a different room or separated area for listening to music.



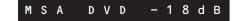
 Pressing the MULTI SPEAKER button on the receiver one time accesses the MULTI SPEAKER A settings. Pressing it two times accesses the MULTI SPEAKER B settings. Then, pressing it a third time turns the MULTI SPEAKER feature off

(The SR7001 does not have a MULTI SPEAKER B setting.)

When the MULTI SPEAKER setting mode is engaged, one of the following screens appears on the display for 10 seconds.

#### - SR8001 -

\* Display when MULTI SPEAKER A is selected



Display when MULTI SPEAKER B is selected



#### - SR7001 -

The unit enters multi room mode and the display indicates "SELECT SOURCE" and flashes the "MULTI" indicator for approx. 10 seconds.

- 3. Select an input source with the INPUT SELECTOR knob.
- Turn the VOLUME knob to set the volume of the room used in the multiroom system as you like.

#### Note:

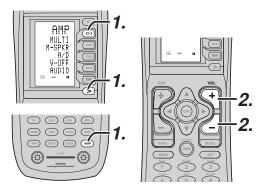
• The sleep timer, monaural output and other features can also be set using the MAIN MENU. (See page 36.)

#### Notes for Multi Room Speaker

- The Multiroom Speaker mode can be set for only one of the rooms, A or B.
- The MULTIROOM SPEAKER output terminals can be used when Surround Back Speaker = "NONE" in the SPEAKER SETUP menu. (See SPEAKER SETUP, page 26)
- "The Surr. Back Speakers are in use" is displayed when the MULTI SPEAKER button is pressed when the Surround Back Speaker is not set to "NONE" in the SPEAKER SETUP menu. (See SPEAKER SETUP, page 26)
- The Multispeaker mode cannot be used at the same time as the speaker C. When connecting for multiroom use, set the SPEAKER C selector switch on the rear panel to OFF.

## OPERATION OF THE MULTI ROOM OUTPUTS WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL FROM MULTI A

Room A output can be operated from a room where the receiver is not installed. This requires a separately sold IR receiver. (For connections, see page 11.)



 Press MULTI on the multi room remote control from the MULTI ROOM.

(Press the **AMP** button and press the > button until PAGE 4 is displayed. Press the **MULTI (D1)** button.)

This operations will put the SR7001 into multi room mode and "MULTI" will be illuminated on the display.

MULTI ROOM Video out put will show OSD information for the MULTI ROOM setup.



- Press the VOL+ or VOL- button on the multi room remote control to set the desired volume.
- **3.** In multi room mode, the multi room remote control can be used in the multiroom to operate the following functions.

#### General:

Controlling volume level, sleep timer, and muting. Selecting input audio and video source.

#### Tuner:

Selecting band, controlling preset channel up and down, tuning up and down direct frequency call.

#### Notes for the Multi Room System

- The MULTI ROOM OUT (MULTI OUT/MULTI SPEAKER) has analog outputs.
- This does not support digital input signals.
- If the Tuner (FM or AM) is active in the main room, you can not control any function of the tuner. In this case, You must listen to the same station as the main room.
- When the component with RC-5 bus is connected to the MULTI RC IN jack(see page 19), Multiroom A can be operated using the RC codes for the main room. The remote control units of other Marantz products can also be used to control multiroom A. (Room B output cannot be operated from another room.)

### REMOTE CONTROLLER OPERATION

#### **CONTROLLING MARANTZ COMPONENTS**

- **1.** Press the desired function button.
  - · The selected function name and USE are displayed in the LCD.
- **2.** Press the desired operation buttons to play the selected component.
  - · For details, refer to the component's user guide.
  - · It may not be possible to operate some models.

#### CONTROLLING A MARANTZ DVD PLAYER (DVD MODE)



SOURCE ON/OFF	Turns the DVD player on and off
POWER ON	Turns the DVD player on
POWER OFF	Turns the DVD player off
D1 - D5 / >(Page)	(Refer to page vi)
Cursor/OK	Move the cursor, enters the setting
MENU	Calls up the menu of DVD disc
0-9	Input the numeric
MEMO	Call up the programming menu
CLEAR	Clears the inputting
<b>&gt;</b>	Play
<b> 44</b>   <b> </b>	Skip forward or previous chapter/
	track
	Stop
II	Pause

#### CONTROLLING A MARANTZ CD PLAYER (CD MODE)



SOURCE ON/OFF	Turns the CD player on and off	
POWER ON	Turns the CD player on	
POWER OFF	Turns the CD player off	
D1 - D5 / >(Page)	(Refer to page vi)	
MENU	Switches the display information	
0-9	Input the numeric	
MEMO	Programs	
CLEAR	Clears the inputting	
<b>•</b>	Play	
	Skip forward or previous track	
	Stop	
II	Pause	

#### CONTROLLING A MARANTZ VCR (VCR MODE)



SOURCE ON/OFF	Turns the VCR on and off
D1 - D5 / >(Page)	(Refer to page vi)
MENU	Call up the menu
EXIT	Exits the programming menu
0-9	Input the numeric
<b>•</b>	Play
<b> 44/</b>	Skip forward or previous track
	Stop
II	Pause
•	Record
·	·

#### CONTROLLING A MARANTZ CD RECORDER (CDR MODE)



SOURCE ON/OFF	Turns the CD recorder on and off
POWER ON	Turns the CD recorder on
POWER OFF	Turns the CD recorder off
D1 - D5 / >(Page)	(Refer to page vi)
MENU	Switches the display information
0-9	Input the numeric
MEMO	Programs
CLEAR	Clears the inputting
<b>&gt;</b>	Play
<b>             </b>	Skip forward or previous track
	Stop
II	Pause
•	Record

#### CONTROLLING A MARANTZ MD DECK (MD MODE)



SOURCE ON/OFF	Turns the MD deck on and off
POWER ON	Turns the MD deck on
POWER OFF	Turns the MD deck off
D1 - D5 / >(Page)	(Refer to page vi)
MENU	Switches the display information
0-9	Input the numeric
MEMO	Programs
CLEAR	Clears the inputting
<b>&gt;</b>	Play
<b> 44</b> / <b>&gt;&gt;</b>	Skip forward or previous track
	Stop
=	Pause
•	Record

#### **CONTROLLING A MARANTZ TAPE DECK (TAPE MODE)**



SOURCE ON/OFF	Turns the TAPE deck on and off
POWER ON	Turns the TAPE deck on
POWER OFF	Turns the TAPE deck off
D1 - D5 / >(Page)	(Refer to page vi)
0-9	Input the numeric
MEMO	Programs
CLEAR	Clears the inputting
•	Play
<b> </b>	Skip forward or previous track
	Stop
II	Pause
•	Record

#### **BASIC OPERATION**

#### **USE MODE**

#### (Normal operation status)

This remote control is preset with a total of 12 types of remote codes, including Marantz TV (television), DVD, VCR (VCR deck), DSS (satellite broadcasting tuner), TUNER, CD/CD-R, MD, TAPE (tape deck), AUX1, AUX2, and AMP (amplifier).

Learning is not necessary for Marantz products. You can use these products without setting any codes.

**1.** Press the **SOURCE** button. For this example, press DVD.

DVD is shown on the LCD, and the remote control is set for DVD.

Pressing the **SOURCE** button once changes the remote control to the settings for the source that was pressed.

To change the amplifier or other source, press the **SOURCE** button twice (double-click). The code is sent, and then the amplifier source changes to DVD

**2.** Press the buttons to operate the DVD.

The findicator is shown on the LCD while the remote control codes are being transmitted. It is not displayed when buttons without stored code are pressed.

3. The direct buttons can be used to perform up to 20 operations for each of the 12 sources, including DVD, TV, AMP, and other AV equipment.

The buttons consist of the D1 to D5 buttons, and the equipment is operated by pressing the buttons corresponding to the indicators on the LCD.

Four pages are available, and press the > button to select a page. The current page position is displayed on the LCD.

#### PRESET MODE

### (When operating non-Marantz AV equipment products)

This remote control is preset with remote control codes from AV equipment by other manufacturers. The preset codes are TV, VCR, LD, CABLE, DSS, DVD, TAPE, TUNER, CD/CD-R, MD and AMP. Settings can be made in one of two ways.

When the preset codes are set, the following codes are contained in the **SOURCE** button of the remote control.

See the attached manufacturer number list for the preset manufacturers, devices, preset numbers, and other settings.

Remote control source name	Corresponding preset code	Device name
TV	TV	Television
DVD	DVD	DVD player
VCR	VCR	Video deck
DSS	SATELLITE	Satellite broadcasting tuner equipment
TUNER	RECEIVER/TUNER	AM FM TUNER
CD	CD/CD-R PLAYER	CD player
CD-R	CD/CD-R PLAYER	CD recorder
MD	CD/CD-R PLAYER	MD deck
TAPE	TAPE	Cassette deck
AUX1	CABLE	Cable television
AUX2	LASER DISC	Laser disc player
AMP	AMPLIFIER	Amplifier or receiver
	RECEIVER/TUNER	

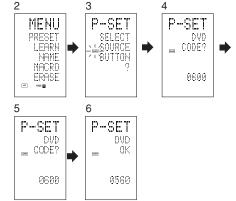
 When using Marantz products, TV and DVD can be set to TV1 (TV/VDP: Projector) and TV2 (PDP: Plasma display), and DVD1 (first DVD player) and DVD2 (second DVD player), respectively, to match the customer's operating environment. These settings are made in PRESET mode.

In the factory default state, the remote control is set to TV1 and DVD1. To make the presets, enter the numbers below while referring to the section "Entering and Setting the Manufacturer Number Directly".

TV1: 0001, TV2: 0002 DVD1: 0001, DVD2: 0002

### Entering and Setting the Manufacturer Number Directly

Refer to the manufacturer number list. This example shows how to set a SAMSUNG DVD player.



- View the supplied manufacturer number list, and find the number of the manufacturer for the device that you are using.
- Hold down the M button for three seconds or more.

The menu is displayed.

- Press the D1 (PRESET) direct button.
   The Preset setting (P-SET) is displayed.
- 4. Press the DVD source button.
- Press the numeric buttons to enter the fourdigit manufacturer number.

Example: To enter "0600" from the manufacturer number list.

To correct the entered number, use the ◀ or ► cursor button to enter the correct number.

- If no button is pressed for over one minute during the setting process, any settings that were made are cancelled.
- 6. Press the OK cursor button.
- 7. Confirm the OK is displayed and then the display returns to the Preset Setting (P-SET). When the manufacturer number is entered correctly, OK is displayed momentarily on the screen.
  - If you enter a number not in the manufacturer number list, WRONG CODE is displayed, and then you return to the preset setting again

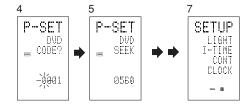
Check the manufacturer number list, and either set a different number or use the sequence function to set.

- 7. To set the manufacturer number for another source device, repeat the procedure in steps 4 to 6.
- After the settings are completed, press the M button.
- **10.** Press the buttons on the remote control to check that the DVD can be operated correctly.

### Setting Equipment Not Appearing in Manufacturer Number List

Use the sequence function to set equipment not appearing in the manufacturer number list. You may still be unable to set some equipment even when using the sequence function. In this case, the remote control can be programmed with codes individually. In the sequence function, the power ON/OFF codes are transmitted by pressing the remote control buttons in order.

If the power for the equipment is left on, hold down the button until the equipment is turned off, and then release. This completes the setting. This example shows how to set a DVD player.



- 1. Turn on the power of the DVD player.
- Hold down the M button for three seconds or more. The menu is displayed.
- **3.** Press the **D1** (PRESET) direct button. The Preset setting (P-SET) is displayed.
- 4. Press the DVD source button.
- Hold down the CH+ or CH- button for one second or more.
- **6.** Press the **CH+** button repeatedly in the interval for one second.

The signal is transmitted, and the display cycles through the code number.

Press the **CH-** button to go back to a number screen.

- Release the button once the DVD player turns off.
- 8. Press the OK cursor button.
- Confirm the OK is displayed and then the display returns to the Preset Setting (P-SET).
- 10. To set the manufacturer number for another source device, repeat the procedure in steps 4 to 8.
- After the settings are completed, press the M button.
- **12.** Press the buttons on the remote control to check that the DVD can be operated correctly.

Check the following points if the equipment which was set does not operate properly.

- If there is more than one number in the manufacturer number list, try setting a different number.
- There may be some buttons which cannot be used. Program the codes to the required buttons.

#### LEARN MODE

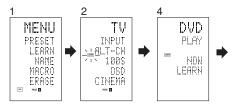
#### Programming the ► (PLAY) and Other Control Buttons and Numeric Buttons

This remote control is capable of learning and storing codes used by other remote controls that you already own.

For codes which are not learned, the remote control will transmit either the Marantz preset codes from the initial settings, or remote codes from another manufacturer's AV equipment which is set by the customer.

The receiver sensor for the remote control signals is located at the top of the remote control.

This example shows how to learn the codes from the remote control of a DVD player.



6 (When OK) (failed)

OK.

MENU

AUDIO

SUB-T

10+

TRAY



FULL MENU AUDIO SUB-T 1.04 TRAY

1. Hold down the M button for three seconds or The menu is displayed.

- Press the **D2** (LEARN) direct button. The LEARN setting (LEARN) is displayed. The LEARN indicator then blinks.
- Press the **DVD** source button.
- Press the ► (PLAY) button. The LEARN indicator blinks, and then displays to indicate that learning is ready.
- Place the receiver sensor of the remote control (top) so that it is facing the transmitter of the DVD remote control (top) at a distance of about 5 cm (2 inches).

Press and hold down the ► (PLAY) button of the transmitting DVD remote control, and check that OK is displayed on the LCD.

The remote control has finished learning when OK is displayed on the LCD.

If ERROR is displayed on the LCD, some error has prevented the command from being learned. If this happens, repeat the procedure for steps 4 and 5. In some rare cases, ERROR may be displayed repeatedly during the learning operation. In this case, the transmitting remote control may have special signal codes. These codes cannot be learned by this remote control.

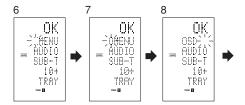
- 7. Follow the same procedure to make the remote control learn the other buttons.
- Repeat the procedure in steps 3 to 6 to have the remote control learn the signal codes from a TV, CD player, or other AV equipment.
  - · When no buttons are pressed for approximately one minute during the learning operation, the remote control automatically returns to USE mode.
  - When programming the source buttons. switch to the source in step 3, and then press the source button again.
- **9.** When you have finished programming the codes for each button, press the M button. The USE indicator is displayed on the LCD, and the newly stored codes can be used.
  - · If FULL is displayed on the LCD, the memory cannot hold any more learned codes in LEARN mode.

If FULL is displayed no matter how many times you try the learning operation, the remote control cannot accept any more new codes until some of the previously learned codes are deleted from the memory. Delete some of the learned buttons from the sources.

The M button and > button cannot be taught. Only each one code can be learned for the LIGHT buttons 1 and 2, regardless of the source.

#### Programming the Direct Buttons and Rewriting Names

This example shows how to program codes from other manufacturer products to the DVD MENU button (D1) and change the display to OSD.



- 1. Hold down the M button for three seconds or more. The menu is displayed.
- Press the **D2** (LEARN) direct button. The LEARN setting (LEARN) indicator is displayed. The LEARN indicator then blinks.
- Press the **DVD** source button. The first page of the direct button screen is displayed. There are four available pages. Pressing the > buttons cycles through the pages in this order  $1 \rightarrow 2 \rightarrow 3 \rightarrow 4 \rightarrow 1$ .
- Press the **D1** (MENU) direct button. The LEARN indicator blinks, and then displays to indicate that learning is ready.
- Place the receiver sensor of the remote control (top) so that it is facing the transmitter of the DVD remote control (top) at a distance of about 5 cm (2 inches).
- 6. Press and hold down the OSD button of the transmitting DVD remote control, and check that OK is displayed on the LCD.

The remote control has finished learning when OK is displayed on the LCD.

If ERROR is displayed on the LCD, some error has prevented the command from being learned. If this happens, repeat the procedure for steps 4 and 5.

- After learning is completed, the remote control automatically switches to name rewriting mode. The left end ".." indicator on the MENU blinks to indicate that the blinking part can be rewritten.
- If no names will be rewritten, press the **OK** cursor button. The display returns to learning standby mode by pressing the **OK** cursor button.

- 7. To change the name, press the numeric buttonsto enter the text.
  - sections to be rewritten on the LCD.
  - To change MENU to OSD, press the 5 numeric button.

Each time the button is pressed, the display cycles through  $M \rightarrow N \rightarrow O \rightarrow 5 \rightarrow M$ .

**8.** After rewriting of the text is completed, press the **OK** cursor button.

To delete text that is already entered, press the 0 button to insert a space.

 In this example. MENU is changed to "OSD (space) (space)" in this step, and then OSD is displayed in the right side by pressing the **OK** button.

For details, refer to the section "Rewriting Names".

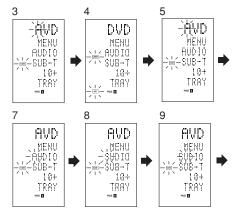
- In the same way, use the > button to select the page, and then press the direct button to program the codes.
- **10**. After programming the codes for each of the buttons, press the M button. The USE indicator displays on the LCD, and the

newly stored codes can be transmitted.

#### **REWRITING NAMES**

This remote control allows the rewriting of names for the sources and direct buttons. This operation is performed for each individual source.

This example shows how to change the source name from DVD to AVD and AUDIO to SOUND.



- Hold down the M button for three seconds or The menu is displayed.
- Press the D3 (NAME) direct button.

- 3. Press the DVD source button .
  - The NAME indicator blinks.

The "..." blinks to indicate that the letter can be changed.

- 4. Press the ➤ cursor button twice. The D in DVD blinks to indicate that the letter can be changed.
- Press the 1 numeric button to select A.
   Each time the numeric buttons are pressed, the button cycles through the alphanumeric characters shown below.

$$\begin{aligned} 1: A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow A \\ 2: D \rightarrow E \rightarrow F \rightarrow 2 \rightarrow D \\ 3: G \rightarrow H \rightarrow I \rightarrow 3 \rightarrow G \\ 4: J \rightarrow K \rightarrow L \rightarrow 4 \rightarrow J \\ 5: M \rightarrow N \rightarrow O \rightarrow 5 \rightarrow M \\ 6: P \rightarrow Q \rightarrow R \rightarrow 6 \rightarrow P \\ 7: S \rightarrow T \rightarrow U \rightarrow 7 \rightarrow S \\ 8: V \rightarrow W \rightarrow X \rightarrow 8 \rightarrow V \\ 9: Y \rightarrow Z \rightarrow / \rightarrow 9 \rightarrow Y \end{aligned}$$

0: SPACE (::)  $\rightarrow + \rightarrow - \rightarrow , \rightarrow ' \rightarrow < \rightarrow > \rightarrow ? \rightarrow 0$ 

6. Press the ◀ or ▶ cursor button . The letter is changed to "A".

→ SPACE (::)

- The ▲ and ▼ cursor buttons can be used to move the blinking indicator of the section to be rewritten.
- 7. Press the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons to select AUDIO on the direct button indicator. The A flashes to indicate that the name can be changed.
- Press the 7 numeric button to select S. Each time the button is pressed, the button cycles through S → T → U → 7 → S.
- **9.** Press the ▶ cursor button to move the flashing section
- 10. Press the 5 numeric button to select 0
- Follow the same procedure to enter U, N, and D.
- 12. When finished entering the text, press the OK cursor button .
- 13. Press the M button.

The USE indicator displays on the LCD, and the newly stored codes can be used.

The input is overwritten, and so the currently displayed text is erased.

Up to six characters can be entered for the direct button indicator.

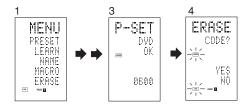
### ERASING PROGRAMMED CODES (RETURNING TO INITIAL SETTINGS)

Codes can be erased in five ways: by buttons, direct buttons, direct button pages, sources, and by all memory contents.

#### **Erasing Buttons and Erasing Direct Buttons**

This example shows how to erase the code learned from the **PLAY** button of the DVD player and the AUTO code of the AMP direct button.

#### Erasing buttons



 Hold down the M button for three seconds or more.

The menu is displayed.

- Press the D5 (ERASE) direct button .
- **3.** Press the **DVD** source button . The USE and LEARN indicators blink.
- **4.** Press the button ► (PLAY) that you want to erase while holding down the **CLEAR** button . A message is displayed on the LCD.
- Press the D4 (YES) direct button to erase.
   The code programmed to the ► (PLAY) button is erased.

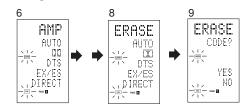
When the code is cleared, the code for this button resets to the factory default code or becomes blank.

 To cancel the erasing operation, press the D5 (NO) button to return to the previous display.

To erase codes programmed for the **CLEAR** button, simply press the **CLEAR** button twice.

To erase codes programmed for the **SOURCE** button, simply press the **SOURCE** button twice.

#### Erasing direct buttons



- 6. Press the AMP source button .
- 7. Press the > button to display the first page for AMP.
- **8.** Press the **D1** (AUTO) direct button to be erased while holding down the **CLEAR** button.
- **9.** Press the **D4** (YES) direct button to erase. The code programmed to the **AUTO** button is erased

When the code is cleared, the code for this button resets to the factory default code or becomes blank. The rewritten name returns to the original name.

- To cancel the erasing operation, press the D5 (NO) button to return to the previous screen.
- **10.** When the erasing operation is finished, press the  $\underline{M}$  button .

The USE indicator displays to indicate that the remote control can now be operated.

#### **Erasing Direct Button Pages**

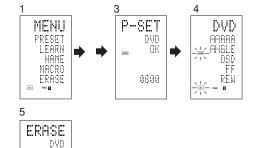
<u>\_200827</u>

YES

Page 2

NO

This example shows how to erase the entire direct button second page learned from the DVD player.



- Hold down the M button for three seconds or more. The menu is displayed.
- Press the D5 (ERASE) direct button .
- **3.** Press the **DVD** source button . The USE and LEARN indicators blink.
- **4.** Press the > button to display the second page.
- 5. Press the > button while holding down the CLEAR button .

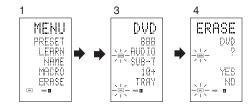
- Press the **D4** (YES) direct button to erase. All codes and names programmed to page 2 are erased. When the codes are cleared, the codes for this button reset to the factory default code or become blank. Any rewritten names return to the original name.
  - To cancel the erasing operation, press the D5 (NO) button to return to the previous screen.
- 7. When the erasing operation is finished, press the M button.

The USE indicator lights up to indicate that the remote control can now be operated.

#### **Erasing Sources**

This procedure clears all codes and names programmed to the DVD, TV, or other sources. All codes and names in the four direct button pages are also erased.

This example shows how to erase the names and codes learned from the DVD player.

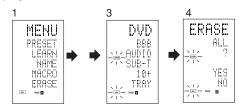


- Hold down the M button for three seconds or more. The menu is displayed.
- Press the **D5** (ERASE) direct button.
- **3.** Press the **DVD** source button . The USE and LEARN indicators blink.
- 4. Press the DVD source button while holding down the CLEAR button.
- Press the D4 (YES) direct button to erase. All codes and names programmed to the DVD source are erased. When the codes are cleared, the codes for this button reset to the factory default code or become blank. Any rewritten names return to the original name.
  - To cancel the erasing operation, press the D5 (NO) button to return to the previous display.
- 6. When the erasing operation is finished, press the <u>M button</u>.

The USE indicator displays to indicate that the remote control can now be operated.

#### **Erasing All**

This procedure clears (resets) all programmed codes and names. Once all the data is cleared, the memory is returned to the factory default status. The programmed macros are also erased.



- Hold down the M button for three seconds or more.
  - The menu is displayed.
- 2. Press the **D5** (ERASE) direct button . The USE and LEARN indicators blink.
- Press the CLEAR button while holding down the POWER ON and OFF buttons at the same time
- 4. Press the D4 (YES) direct button to erase. All programmed codes and names are erased and reset to the factory default settings.
  - To cancel the erasing operation, press the D5 (NO) button to return to the previous screen.
  - To erase all operation takes a few seconds after the D4 (YES) button is pressed.

#### PROGRAMMING MACROS

This remote control can program a series of button operations in sequence.

Macros are a function that makes it possible to use a single button operation to perform a complex series of button operations any number of times. A single button can be programmed to perform up to 20 steps in sequence. A total of 20 buttons can be programmed with macros.

• For example, the following sequence of operations can be programmed to a macro.

Switch amplifier to DVD source → Set amplifier mode to AUTO → Play DVD player → Switch TV to video input

The factory default for the transmission interval (time) between macro operations is one second, but these signal transmission intervals can be set between approximately 0.5 seconds and 5 seconds in the Setup mode. Each transmission interval can be adjusted independently when programming or revising a macro.

#### Note:

- If the signal transmission interval (interval time) is changed using the Setup mode (described later), this transmission interval is applied to all macro programs. To change individual signal transmission intervals, use the procedures in this section for programming macros and revising macros.
- No signals are transmitted while programming a macro.
- The M button, > button, cursor buttons, MEMO button, CLEAR button, and VOL buttons cannot be programmed.
- If no button is pressed for approximately one minute during programming, the remote control returns to the state before macro mode.

In this case, the macro program is not stored.

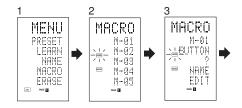
 When executing macro mode, performing the source switching operation two or more times only changes the remote control mode and does not transmit any signals. (Switching of the source selector of the amplifier is valid only once.)

#### PROGRAMMING MACROS

This example shows how to program a macro to the **M-01** button.

(The screens shown in the example are the default factory states. If the names of direct buttons were rewritten, these modified names would be displayed.)

Switch amplifier to DVD source → Play DVD player → Set the interval to 2 seconds until the next signal is sent → Switch TV to video input → Set the amplifier mode to AUTO



 Hold down the M button for three seconds or more.

The menu is displayed.

2. Press the **D4** (MACRO) direct button . The macro menu is displayed.

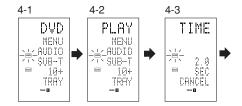
The MACRO indicator displays and LEARN blinks.

Press the D1 (M-01) direct button.
 The menu has four pages, and so use the > button to select the page when programming other buttons.

Press the buttons in the sequence that you want the operations performed.

The actual program starts here.

Each time a button is pressed, the name of the button is displayed on the LCD.



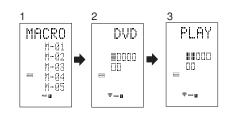
- 4-1. Press the **DVD** source button .
- **4**-2. Press the ► (PLAY) button .
- **4**-3. Press the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons . The interval time is displayed on the LCD.
- **4**-4. Press the ▲ or ▼ cursor buttons and set to 2.0 (seconds).
  - Use the ▲ cursor button to increase the time and the ▼ button to decrease the time. The interval time can be set from 0.5 seconds to 5 seconds.
  - To stop the time adjustment, press the D5 (CANCEL) direct button.
- 4-5. Press the **OK** cursor button .
- 4-6. Press the TV source button .
- **4**-7. Press the > button to display the first page.
- 4-8. Press the D1 (INPUT) direct button.
- **4**-9. Press the **AMP** source button .
- **4**-10. Press the > button to display the first page.
- 4-11 Press the D1 (AUTO) direct button.
- 4-12 Press the **OK** cursor button.
- The LCD displays END to indicate that programming is completed.
- To program another macro, repeat the procedure in steps 3 to 4-12.
- 6. To exit macro programming, press the M button

The USE indicator displays to indicate that the remote control can now be operated.

When the macro are programmed 20 operations or more, the display returns macro menu.

Edit the macro so that it has 20 operations or less.

#### **EXECUTING MACRO PROGRAMS**



- 1. Press the M button shortly. The macro menu is displayed.
- Press the D1 (M-01) direct button .
- **3.** Check that the operations of the program are executed step by step.

The name of the operation button is displayed on the LCD.

The programmed section is indicated by
 The bar indicator moves to indicate the progress of the program.

Select DVD source → PLAY transmit → Interval time: 2 seconds → Select TV → TV INPUT transmit → Select AMP → AUTO transmit → End

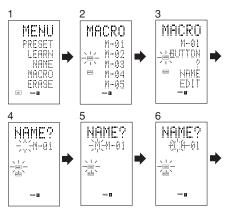
• To cancel transmission of the program while it is in progress, press any button.

#### **CHANGING NAMES OF MACRO PROGRAMS**

Under the factory default settings, the names of the macro programs are set from M-01 to M-20, but you can change them to any desired name.

The text can have up to six characters, and it is entered using the numeric buttons.

This example shows how to change the M-01 name to MOVIE.



 Hold down the M button for three seconds or more.

The menu is displayed.

- Press the D4 (MACRO) direct button. The macro menu is displayed.
   The MACRO indicator displays and LEARN blinks.
- **3.** Press the **D1** (M-01) direct button . The NAME is displayed.
- Press the D3 (NAME) direct button . The ":" blinks to indicate that rewriting is possible.
- **5**. Press the **5** numeric button to select M.
- 6. Press the ➤ cursor button to next. The "..." blinks to indicate that rewriting is possible.
- 7. Press the 5 numeric button to select O.
- Repeat steps 6 and 7, and then enter V, I, E and ":: (space)".
  - To make changes in the text while entering it, use the 

    or 

    cursor buttons to move to the blinking section.
- After making the changes, press the OK cursor button.
  - To change the names of other macro programs, repeat the procedure in steps 3 to 9.
- 10. To exit, press the M button.

#### **ERASING STEPS OF MACRO PROGRAMS**

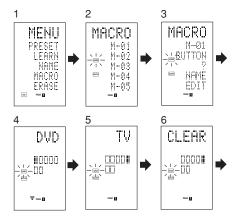
This example shows how to delete the TV and INPUT steps from the following macro programmed to M-01.

The program is changed from

 $\mathsf{DVD} \to \mathsf{PLAY} \to \mathsf{TIME} \to \mathsf{TV} \to \mathsf{INPUT} \to \mathsf{AMP} \to \mathsf{AUTO}$   $\mathsf{AUTO}$ 

to

 $DVD \rightarrow PLAY \rightarrow TIME \rightarrow AMP \rightarrow AUTO$ .



 Hold down the M button for three seconds or more.

The menu is displayed.

**2.** Press the **D4** (MACRO) direct button. The macro menu is displayed.

The MACRO indicator displays and LEARN blinks.

- Press the D1 (M-01) direct button.
- Press the D5 (EDIT) direct button. The LCD displays DVD, and the step position is indicated by ■.

The programmed section is indicated by **△**.

- **5.** Press the ▶ cursor button to display TV.
- Press the CLEAR button. The LCD displays CLEAR, and TV and INPUT are deleted.

When deleting steps from a macro program, the operations performed for a source after switching to the source are also deleted.

If the **CLEAR** button is pressed at the INPUT position, only the INPUT step is deleted.

The  $\square$  indicator for the step is also changed.

- To check the modified steps, press the ◀ or
   ► cursor button.
- 7. To exit, press the M button.
  When finished, to change another macro program,
  press the OK cursor button to return to the menu,
  and then repeat the procedure for steps 3 to 6.

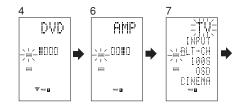
#### **OVERWRITING STEPS IN MACRO PROGRAMS**

This example shows how to change the macro programmed to M-01 from

 $DVD \rightarrow PLAY \rightarrow AMP \rightarrow AUTO$ 

to

 $DVD \rightarrow PLAY \rightarrow TV \rightarrow INPUT.$ 



 Hold down the M button for three seconds or more.

The menu is displayed.

**2.** Press the **D4** (MACRO) direct button. The macro menu is displayed.

The MACRO indicator displays and LEARN blinks.

- 3. Press the D1 (M-01) direct button.
- 4. Press the D5 (EDIT) direct button. The LCD displays DVD, and the step position is indicated by ■.

The programmed section is indicated by  $\Box$ .

**5.** Press the ▶ cursor button so that AMP is displayed.

- **6.** Press the **TV** source button. TV blinks for 0.5 seconds.
- 7. Press the **D1** (INPUT) direct button. INPUT blinks for 0.5 seconds.

TV and INPUT are overwritten.

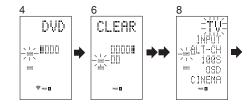
- To check the modified steps, press the ◀ or
   ▶ cursor button.
- **8.** To exit, press the **M** button. When finished, to change another macro program, press the **OK** cursor button to return to the menu, and then repeat the procedure for steps 3 to 8.

#### **INSERTING STEPS IN MACRO PROGRAMS**

This example shows how to change the macro programmed to M-01 from

 $DVD \rightarrow PLAY \rightarrow AMP \rightarrow AUTO$ 

 $DVD \rightarrow PLAY \rightarrow TV \rightarrow INPUT \rightarrow AMP \rightarrow AUTO$ 



- Hold down the M button for three seconds or more. The menu is displayed.
- Press the D4 (MACRO) direct button. The macro menu is displayed.
   The MACRO indicator displays and LEARN blinks.
- 3. Press the D1 (M-01) direct button .
- 4. Press the D5 (EDIT) direct button . The LCD displays DVD, and the step position is indicated by ■.
  The programmed section is indicated by □.
- Press the ► cursor button so that AMP is displayed.
- 6. Press the **MEMO** button.
- Press the TV source button. TV blinks for 0.5 seconds
- Press the D1 (INPUT) direct button. INPUT blinks for 0.5 seconds.
  TV and INPUT are inserted.
- Press the OK cursor button.
  - To check the modified steps, press the ◀ or
     ▶ cursor button.
- 10. To exit, press the M button. When finished, to change another macro program, press the OK cursor button to return to the menu, and then repeat the procedure for steps 3 to 9.

#### **CLEARING MACRO PROGRAMS**

When clearing macros, the macros programmed to the button are erased. Modified macro names are also returned to the factory default settings. This example shows how to clear a macro with the name MOVIE programmed to M-02.



- Press the M button for three second or more.
   The macro menu is displayed.
- **2.** Press the **D4** (MACRO) direct button . The macro menu is displayed.
- **3.** Press the **D2** (MOVIE) direct button while holding down the **CLEAR** button.
- 4. Press the D4 (YES) direct button to clear the macro.
  To speed the elegring exerction press the NO (D5)
  - To cancel the clearing operation, press the **NO** (D5 button).
- To exit, press the M button. When finished, to change another macro program, press the OK cursor button to return to the menu, and then repeat the procedure for steps 2 to 4.

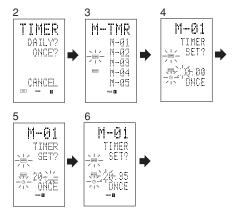
#### SETTING THE MACRO TIMER

Setting the macro timer enables the macro program to automatically turn the power for a device on or off or perform other operations.

In the settings, you can select to execute the macro timer everyday or only once.

Be sure to set the clock to the correct time before using the timer. The macro timer can only be set for one program a day.

This example shows how to use the timer only once at 20:35 to execute a macro programmed to M-01.



- Hold down the M button for three seconds or more. The menu is displayed.
- Press the > button to display the third page TIMER menu.
- Press the D2 (ONCE?) direct button. The M-TMR menu is displayed on the LCD.
  - · To cancel timer operation, press CANCEL.
- **4.** Press the **D1** (M-01) direct button . The time which is set previously is displayed.
- **5.** Press the **2** and **0** numeric button to set the hour indicator to 20.
- **6.** Press the **3** and **5** numeric button to set the minute indicator to 35.
- 7. Press the **OK** cursor button. This finalizes the time.
- To exit, press the M button. To cancel the macro timer, return to the TIMER menu and press the D5 (CANCEL) and then press D1 (M-01).

#### **EXECUTING THE MACRO TIMER**

The macro program starts when the time that was set is reached. The TIMER  $\bigcirc$  indicator lights up whenever the macro timer is activated.

#### Note:

• To execute the macro timer, place the remote control facing the infrared sensor of the device to be operated. If the remote control is not in a suitable position, it may not operate the device properly.

#### **CLONE MODE**

#### CREATING COPIES USING CLONE MODE

All of the codes programmed to the RC8001SR remote control can be copied to another RC8001SR using a few simple operations.

- The remote control can copy the entire contents or the contents for specific source buttons.
- When copying the entire contents, all programmed codes, modified names, programmed macros, and signal transmission intervals are copied.

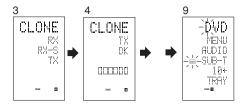
When copying the contents for source buttons, the programmed codes and modified names are copied.

#### Note:

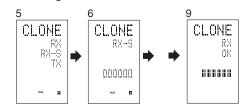
• The clone function can only be used for copying when using the same model (RC8001SR) for both the transmitting and receiving remote control.

#### **COPYING ENTIRE CONTENTS**

#### <Transmitting remote control>



#### <Receiving remote control>



- Place the receiver sensor of the receiving remote control (top) so that it is facing the transmitter of the transmitting remote control (top) at a distance of about 5 cm (2 inches).
- Hold down the M button of the transmitting remote control for three seconds or more. The menu is displayed.
- Press the > button to display the fourth page CLONE menu.
- **4.** Press the **D3** (TX) direct button. The transmitting side is now ready.
- Hold down the M button of the receiving remote control for three seconds or more. The menu is displayed.
- 6. Press the > button to display the fourth page CLONE menu.
- **7.** Press the **D1** (RX) direct button. The receiving side is now ready.
- Press the OK cursor button on the receiving remote control.
- Press the OK cursor button on the transmitting remote control.

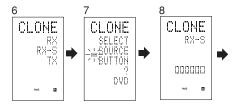
When copying is started, the bar indicators on both LCDs start to move from the left to the right.

- When the copying operation is completed, TX OK is displayed on the LCD of the transmitting remote control, and RX OK is displayed on the LCD of the receiving remote control.
- Do not touch either of the remote controls during the copying operation. Doing so could cause copying to fail.
- If the copying fails in the middle of the copying process, RX ERROR is displayed on the receiving remote control. Check and perform steps 1 to 7 again.
- Copying takes about three minutes to complete when the transmitting remote control has been programmed to 100% capacity.
- Once copying is completed, press the M button on both remote controls.

#### **COPYING BY SOURCE**

The 12 sources can be copied on a source by source basis. You can select from up to 12 source types.

#### <Receiving remote control>



- Place the receiver sensor of the receiving remote control (top) so that it is facing the transmitter of the transmitting remote control (top) at a distance of about 5 cm (2 inches).
- Hold down the M button of the transmitting remote control for three seconds or more. The menu is displayed.
- **3.** Press the > button to display the fourth page CLONE menu.
- **4.** Press the **D3** (TX) direct button. The transmitting side is now ready.
- **5.** Hold down the **M** button of the receiving remote control for three seconds or more.
- **6.** Press the > button to display the fourth page CLONE menu.
- **7.** Press the **D2** (RX-S) direct button.
- **8.** Press the source button to be copied. The receiving side is now ready.

The name of the source which was pressed is displayed on the LCD.

- Each time the source button is pressed, the name is displayed on the LCD.
- **9.** Press the **OK** cursor button on the receiving remote control.
- Press the OK cursor button on the transmitting remote control.

When copying is started, the bar indicators on both LCDs start to move from the left to the right.

- When the copying operation is completed, TX OK is displayed on the LCD of the transmitting remote control, and RX OK is displayed on the LCD of the receiving remote control.
- Do not touch either of the remote controls during the copying operation. Doing so could cause copying to fail.
- If the copying fails in the middle of the copying process, ERROR is displayed on the remote control.

Check and perform steps 1 to 7 again.

**11.** Once copying is completed, press the **M** button on both remote controls.

#### **SETUP**

#### SETTING THE LIGHTING TIME

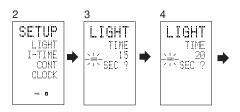
- The LCD lights up when the LIGHT buttons are pressed. The LCD remains lit while the pressed button is held down, and it goes off when the button is released.
- The LCD continues to light up if another button is pressed while it is lit or if pressed within two seconds after the light goes off.
- The lighting time can be set in one-second units from 0 to 60 seconds.

The LIGHT buttons have light-absorbing properties that enable them to store light. If the buttons are no longer illuminated in a dimly lit environment, bring the buttons near a fluorescent lamp or other light source for a sufficient amount of time. This should illuminate the buttons again.

 The LIGHT buttons consist of a LIGHT1 and LIGHT2 button, and they both perform the same operation.

The factory default lighting time is set to 15 seconds.

This example shows how to set the lighting time to 20 seconds.



 Hold down the M button for three seconds or more.

The menu is displayed.

- Press the > button to display the second page SETUP menu.
- **3.** Press the **D1** (LIGHT) direct button . The LIGHT is displayed on the LCD
- Press the ▲ or ▼ cursor button to set the lighting time.
- Press the **OK** cursor button to enter the lighting time.
- Once the setting is finished, press the M button.

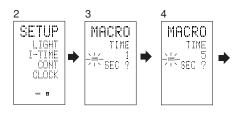
#### SETTING THE MACRO INTERVAL TIME

When a macro program is executed, control signals are transmitted in sequence. This transmission interval (interval time) can be set in 0.5-seconds units from 0.5 to 5 seconds.

If the interval time is set in this Setup mode, the interval times for all programmed macros are changed. If necessary, use EDIT (see page 60) in the macro program to change the individual transmission times

The factory default setting for the transmission interval is 1 second.

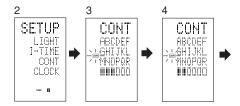
This example shows how to set the interval time to 5 seconds.



- Hold down the M button for three seconds or more. The menu is displayed.
- Press the > button to display the second page SETUP menu.
- Press the D2 (I-TIME) direct button.
- 4. Press the ▲ or ▼ cursor button to set the interval time. Holding down the cursor button fast-forwards the time indicator.
- Press the OK cursor button to enter the interval time.
- Once the setting is finished, press the M button.

#### ADJUSTING THE DISPLAY CONTRAST

The contrast of the LCD can be adjusted. Adjust for maximum visibility according to your viewing environment.



- Hold down the M button for three seconds or more. The menu is displayed.
- Press the > button to display the second page SETUP menu.
- 3. Press the D3 (CONT) direct button .
- 4. Press the ▲ or ▼ cursor button and set the display contrast for maximum visibility. The adjustment has 10 levels.

The factory default setting for the contrast is the fifth level.

- **5.** Press the **OK** cursor button to enter the display contrast.
- Once the setting is finished, press the M button.

### TROUBLESHOOTING

#### In case of trouble, check the following before calling for service:

- **1.** Are the connections made properly?
- 2. Are you operating the unit properly following the user's guide?
- **3.** Are the power amplifiers and speaker working properly?

If the unit does not operate properly, check items shown in the following table.

If your trouble cannot be recovered with the remedy actions listed in the following table, malfunction of the internal circuitry is suspected; immediately unplug the power cable and contact your dealer, nearest Marantz authorized dealer or the Marantz Service Center in your country.

SYMPTOM	CAUSE	REMEDY
SR7001 cannot be turned up.	The power plug is not connected.	Connect the power plug to the outlet.
No sound and picture are output even when power is	Mute is on.	Cancel mute using the remote control unit.
on.	The input cable is not connected correctly.	See the connection diagram and connect the cables correctly.
	The master volume control is turned all the way down.	Adjust the master volume.
	The function selector position is wrong.	Select correct position.
No speaker output.	The headphones are connected to the headphone jack.	Disconnect the headphones. (Speakers will not output sound when headphones are connected.)
Incorrect Audio or Video for selected source.	Input cable connected incorrectly.	Connect the cable correctly by referring to the connection diagram.
Incorrect Audio from a channel.	Speaker cable connected incorrectly.	Connect the cable correctly by referring to the connection diagram.
No Audio output from the center channel speaker.	The center speaker cable connection is incomplete.	Connect the cable correctly.
	STEREO has been selected for Surround mode.	When STEREO is selected for Surround mode, no sound will be output from the center speaker. Set another Surround mode.
	Center = NONE has been selected in SETUP mode.	Make the correct setting.
No Audio output from the surround speakers.	The surround speaker cable connection is incomplete.	Connect the cable correctly.
	STEREO has been selected for Surround mode.	When STEREO has been selected for Surround mode, no sound will be output from the surround speaker. Set another Surround mode.
	Surround = NONE has been selected in SETUP mode.	Make the correct setting.
No Audio output from the surround back speakers.	The surround back speaker cable connection is incomplete.	Connect the cable correctly.
	Surround mode is not EX/ES mode.	Set surround mode EX/ES.
	Surround back = NONE has been selected in SPEAKERS SIZE SETUP	Make the correct setting.

SYMPTOM	CAUSE	REMEDY
Can not select EX/ES mode.	Surround center= NONE has been selected in SPEAKERS SIZE SETUP	Make the correct setting.
	Input signal is incompatible.	Use 5.1channel source.
Can not select Pro Logic IIx mode.	Input signal is incompatible.	Use 2 channel Dolby Digital input signal, PCM input signal or analog input signal.
Can not select Neo:6 mode.	Input signal is incompatible.	Use 2 channel Dolby Digital input signal, PCM input signal or analog input signal.
Can not select CSII mode.	Input signal is incompatible.	Use 2 channel Dolby Digital input signal, PCM input signal or analog input signal.
No output to Subwoofer Out.	Subwoofer = NONE has been selected in SETUP mode.	Select Subwoofer = YES.
Noise is produced during DTS-encoded CD or laser disc play.	Analog has been selected for input.	Be sure to perform digital connection, select digital input, then play.
A specific channel does not produce output.	Nothing recorded on source.	Check the encoded channel on the source side.
FM or AM reception fails.	Antenna connection is incomplete.	Correctly connect the indoor FM and AM antennas to FM and AM antenna outlets.
Noise is heard during AM reception.	Reception is affected by other electrical fields.	Try changing location where the AM indoor antenna is set up.
Noise is heard during FM reception.	The radio waves from the broadcasting station are weak.	Install an FM outdoor antenna.
Cannot get programmed station when the PRESET button is pressed.	Preset data has been erased.	Disconnecting power plug for long periods of time will erase preset data. If that happens, input the preset data again.
Control with the remote control unit fails.	Batteries are consumed.	Replace all the batteries with new ones.
control unit lails.	Remote controller's function-key setting is wrong.	Select different position from which equipment will be controlled.
	The distance between this SR7001 and the remote commander is too far.	Move closer to this SR7001.
	Something is blocking SR7001 and the remote commander.	Remove offending object.
Auto Setup (SPEAKER SETUP) is not working.	Headphones are connected.	Disconnect the headphones.

#### Note:

• After "PROTECT" appears on the unit's display, the standby indicator may start flashing. If it does, there is a problem in the unit or the connection. If this problem reoccurs even when power is activated from the remote control unit, call for servicing.

### HDMI

SYMPTOM	CAUSE	REMEDY
The display does not appear over an HDMI connection.	The connected monitor or projector does not support HDCP.	
connection.	The HDMI input of on the TV is not on.	Set HDMI input so that it turns on, as explained in the TV's instruction manual.
	The HDMI output on the source component (DVD, Set Top Box, etc.) is not on.	Set HDMI output so that it turns on, as explained in the source component's instruction manual.
	The HDMI mode is not correctly set on the SR7001/SR8001.	Set HDMI input on the FUNC INPUT SETUP menu as explained on page 24.
	The HDMI output video resolution of the source component (DVD, Set Top Box, etc.) does not match the TV specifications.	Set the resolution so that it matches, as explained in the instruction manuals of both components.
	The device is connected with a non-standard HDMI cable.	A 5 m or shorter cable is recommended to ensure stable operation and prevent image quality deterioration.
	Power to the SR7001/SR8001 is off. (When the SR7001/SR8001 is on standby, HDMI connections cannot be turned on.)	Turn on the power to the SR7001/SR8001.
	The connection between HDMI components was not authenticated.	Shut off and then turn the power back on to the SR7001/SR8001, TV and source component.
Time is needed for the display of an HDMI connection to appear.	The connection is being authenticated between the HDMI devices.	There is nothing wrong with the system. Some HDMI devices require time for authentication.
Audio is not played back over an HDMI connection.	The HDMI audio output of the source component (DVD, Set Top Box, etc.) is not on.	Set the HDMI audio output so that it turns on, as explained in the source component's instruction manual.
	The signal format of the source component (DVD, Set Top Box, etc.) is not supported by the SR7001/SR8001.	Set the HDMI audio output so that it can connect to the SR7001/SR8001, as explained in the source component's instruction manual.
	The SR7001/SR8001 is set to the HDMI audio "THROUGH" mode.	In the "THROUGH" mode, sound is not produced from the SR7001/SR8001. Set it to "ENABLE". (see page 35)
DVD-Audio is not played back over an HDMI connection.	The DVD player does not support CPPM, therefore it cannot output HDMI audio.	<ul> <li>Use a DVD-Audio player that supports CPPM.</li> <li>Turn on PCM downsampling on the DVD player.</li> <li>Use an analog connection.</li> </ul>

#### **GENERAL MALFUNCTION**

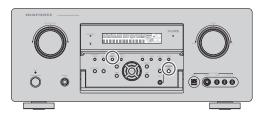
If the equipment malfunctions, this may be because an electrostatic discharge or AC line interference has corrupted the information in the equipment memory circuits. Therefore:

- disconnect the plug from the AC line supply
- after waiting at least three minutes, reconnect the plug to the AC line supply
- re-attempt to operate the equipment

#### Memory backup

 In case a power outage occurs or the power cord is accidentally unplugged, the SR7001 is equipped with a backup function to prevent memory data such as the preset memory from being erased.

#### HOW TO RESET THE UNIT



Should the operation or display seem to be abnormal, reset the unit with the following procedure.

The SR7001 is turned on, press and hold the **MULTI** + **SPEAKERS A/B** buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds or more.

Remember that the procedure will reset the settings of the function selector, Surround mode, delay time, TUNER PRESET etc., to their initial settings.

### TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

#### **FM TUNER SECTION**

Frequency Range	87.5 – 108.0 MHz
Usable Sensitivity	IHF 1.8 μV/16.4 dBf
Signal to Noise Ratio	Mono/Stereo 75/70 dB
Distortion	Mono/Stereo 0.2/0.3 %
Stereo Separation	1 kHz 45 dB
Alternate Channel Selectivity	± 300 kHz 60 dB
Image Rejection	98 MHz 70 dB
Tuner Output Level 1 k	kHz, ± 75 kHz Dev 800 mV

#### **AM TUNER SECTION**

Frequency Range	531 – 1602 kHz
Signal to Noise Ratio	50 dB
	Loop 400µV
Distortion	400Hz, 30 % Mod. 0.5 %
Selectivity	± 20 kHz 70 dB

#### **AUDIO SECTION**

SR7001	
Power Output (20 Hz – 20 kHz	z/THD=0.08%)
Front L&R	8 ohms 110 W / Ch
Center	8 ohms 110 W / Ch
Surround L&R	8 ohms 110 W / Ch
Surround Back L&R	8 ohms 110 W / Ch
Front L&R	6 ohms 140 W / Ch
Center	6 ohms 140 W / Ch
Surround L&R	6 ohms 140 W / Ch
Surround Back L&R	6 ohms 140 W / Ch

### SR8001

Power Output (20 Hz – 20 kHz/ 1 HD=1	J.U8%)			
Front L&R	8 ohms	125	W /	Ch
Center	8 ohms	125	W /	Ch
Surround L&R				
Surround Back L&R	8 ohms	125	W/	Ch
Front L&R	6 ohms	160	W/	Ch
Center	6 ohms	160	W /	Ch
Surround L&R	6 ohms	160	W /	Ch
Surround Back L&R	6 ohms	160	W /	Ch

Input Sensitivity/Impedance.......168 mV/ 47 Kohms Signal to Noise Ratio(Analog Input / Pure Direct) .... 105 dB Frequency Response

(Analog Input / Pure Direct)

#### **VIDEO**

Television Format	NTSC/PAL
Input Level/Impedance	1 Vp-p/75 ohms
Output Level/Impedance	1 Vp-p/75 ohms
Video Frequency Response	5 Hz to 8 MHz (- 1 dB)
Video Frequency (Component)	5 Hz to 80 MHz (- 1 dB)
S/N	60 dB

#### **HDMI**

/ersion	1.2 [INPUT]
	1.1 [OÙTPUT]

#### **GENERAL**

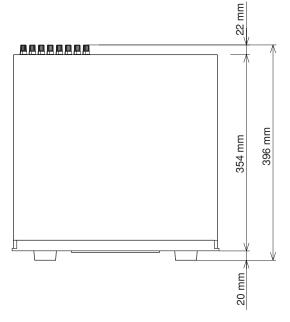
Power Requirement	AC 230 V 50 Hz
Power Consumption	760 W(SR7001)
	790 W(SR8001)
Weight	15.0 kg (SR7001)
	15.0 kg (SR8001)
	,

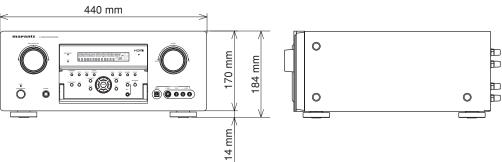
#### ACCESSORIES

Remote Control Unit RC8001SR
Microphone
AAA-size batteries
FM Antenna
AM Loop Antenna
Front AUX Jack Cover
AC cable

Specifications subject to change without prior notice.

### **DIMENSIONS**





## SETUP CODES

#### **AMPLIFIER**

Brand name	Setup code
Amstrad	0105
Arcam	0296
Audiolab	0296
Carver	0296
GE	0105
Genexxa	0422
Grundig	0296
Harman/Kardon	0919
JVC	0358
Left Coast	0919
Linn	0296
Magnavox	0296
Marantz	0919, 0296
Micromega	0296
Myryad	0296
Optimus	0422
Panasonic	0335
Philips	0919, 0296
Pioneer	0040
Polk Audio	0919, 0296
Realistic	0422
Revox	0296
Sony	0247
Soundesign	0105
Technics	0335
Thorens	0296
Victor	0358
Wards	0105, 0040
Yamaha	0381

#### RECEIVER/TUNER

#### Source button name : AMP. TUNER

Source bullo	II Haille . Alvir, I UNLII
Brand name	Setup code
ADC	0558
Aiwa	1432, 0185, 1116, 1415, 1668
Alco	1417
Anam	1636
Apex Digital	1284
Audiolab	1216
Audiotronic	1216
Audiovox	1417
Bose	1256
Cambridge	1397
Soundworks	
Capetronic	0558
Carver	1216, 1116
Centrex	1284
Denon	1387
Ferguson	0558
Fine Arts	1216
Grundig	1216

#### RECEIVER/TUNER

#### Source button name : AMP. TUNER

Source button	name : AMP, TUNER
Brand name	Setup code
Harman/ Kardon	0137, 1331
Integra	0162, 1325
JBL	0137, 1333
JVC	0101, 0558, 1401, 1522
KLH	1417, 1439
Kenwood	1340, 1054
MCS	0066
Magnavox	1216, 1296, 0558, 1116
Marantz	1216, 0066, 1116, 1316
Micromega	1216
Musicmagic	1116
Myryad	1216
NAD	0347
Norcent	1416
Onkyo	0162, 0869, 1325
Optimus	1050, 0558
Panasonic	1545, 0066, 1315, 1790
Philips	1216, 1296, 1116, 1293, 1295, 1310, 1316
Pioneer	1050, 0041, 0558, 1411
Polk Audio	1316
Proscan	1281
Quasar	0066
RCA	1050, 1636, 1281, 0558, 1417
Saba	0558
Sansui	1116
Schneider	0558
Sony	1085, 0185, 1185, 1685, 1785
Stereophonics	1050
Sunfire	1340
Teac	1417
Technics	1335, 1545, 0066, 1336
Telefunken	0558
Thomson	1281
Thorens	1216
Uher	0558
Venturer	1417
Victor	0101
Wards	0185, 0041
Yamaha	0203, 1203, 1358

#### CABLE

#### Source button name : AUX1

Source bullon	Hallie . AUX I
Brand name	Setup code
ABC	0030, 0035
Americast	0926
Bell South	0926
Birmingham Cable	0303
Communications	
British Telecom	0030
Cable & Wireless	1095
Daeryung	0904, 1904, 0504, 0035
Director	0503
Filmnet	0470
General 0503, 0	837, 0303,

### CABLE

#### Source button name : AUX1

Brand name	Setup code
GoldStar	0171
Hamlin	0036, 0300
Instrument	0030
Jerrold	0503, 0837, 0303, 0030
LG	0171
MNet	0470
Memorex	0027
Motorola	0503, 0837, 0303, 1133
NTL	1095
Noos	0844
Ono	1095
PVP Stereo	0030
Visual Matrix	
Pace	0264, 1087, 1095
Panasonic	0027, 0035, 0134
Paragon	0027
Philips	0332, 0344
Pioneer	0904, 1904, 0171, 0560
Pulsar	0027
Quasar	0027
Regal	0306, 0300
Runco	0027
Sagem	0844
Samsung	0027, 0171
Scientific Atlanta	0904, 1904, 0504, 0035
Sony	1033
Starcom	0030
Supercable	0303
TS	0030
Tele+1	0470
Telewest	1095
Torx	0030
Toshiba	0027
Trans PX	0303
United Cable	0030
Zenith	0027, 0552, 0926

### SATELLITE

#### Source button name : DSS

Brand name	Setup code	
@sat	1327	
ABsat	0150	
Alba	0482	
AlphaStar	0799	
Amstrad	0874	
Aston	0169, 1156	
Astro	0200	
Atsat	1327	
Avalon	0423	
Blaupunkt	0200	
British Sky	0874, 1202	
Broadcasting		
Canal Digital	0880	
Canal Satellite	0880	
	·	

#### SATELLITE

#### Source button name : DSS

Source button	name : DSS
Brand name	Setup code
Canal+	0880
Chaparral	0243
Citycom	1203
Connexions	0423
Crossdigital	1136
Cyrus	0227
D-box	0750, 1154
DMT	1102
DNT	0227, 0423
Daeryung	0423
Daewoo	1323
Digenius	0326
DirecTV	0419, 0593, 0666, 1169, 0274, 0776, 1776, 0751,
	0846, 1883, 1103, 1136
Dish Network System	1032, 0802
DishPro	1032, 0802
Distratel	0111
Dream Multimedia	1264
Echostar	1032, 0802, 0194, 0423, 0637, 0880, 0898, 1113
Engel	1044
Expressvu	0802
FTE	0890
Finlux	0482
Fracarro	0898
Fuba	0423
GE	0593
GOI	0802
Galaxis	0890, 1138
General Instrument	0896
Gold Box	0880
Grundig	0200, 0874
HTS	0802
Hirschmann	0200, 0423
Hitachi	0846, 0482
Hughes	1169, 0776, 1776
Network Systems	
Humax	0890, 1203
InVideo	0898
JVC	0802
Kathrein	0150, 0200, 0227, 0276, 0685, 1248
Kreiselmeyer	0200
Labgear	1323
Logix	1044
Lorenzen	0326
Magnavox	0751, 0749
Manhattan	0482, 1044, 1110
Marantz	0227
MediaSat	0880
Memorex	0751
Metronic	0111
Mitsubishi	0776
Motorola	0896
Myryad	0227
Next Level	0896

### SATELLITE

#### Source button name : DSS

oouroo satton	name i 200
Brand name	Setup code
Nokia	0482, 0750, 0778, 1154, 1250, 1750
OctalTV	1032
Orbitech	1127
Pace	0482, 0874, 1202, 1350
Panasonic	0274, 0728, 0874, 1347
Panda	0482
Paysat	0751
Philips	1169, 0776, 1776, 0751, 1103, 0749, 0160, 0227,
	0482, 0880
Pioneer	0880
Promax	0482
Proscan	0419, 0593
RCA	0419, 0593, 0882, 0170
RFT	0227
RadioShack	0896
Radiola	0227
Radix	0423
SKY	0883, 0874, 1202
SM Electronic	1227
Sabre	0482
Sagem	0847, 1141, 1280
Samsung	1303, 1136, 1044, 1319
Sat Control	1327
Satstation	1110
Schwaiger	1138
Seemann	0423
Siemens	0200
Sony	0666, 1666, 0874
Star Choice	0896
Strong	1327
TPS	0847, 1280
Tantec	0482
TechniSat	1126, 1127
Telestar	1127
Thomson	0482, 0880, 1073, 1318
Topfield	1233
Toshiba	0776, 1776, 0817
UltimateTV	0419, 0666
Uniden	0751, 0749
Universum	0200
Ventana	0227
Wisi	0200, 0423, 0482
XSat	0150
Zehnder	1102
Zenith	0883, 1883
-	

#### **TAPE DECK**

#### Source button name : TAPE

	Course battor name : IAI E		
Brand name	Setup code		
Aiwa	0056		
Carver	0056		
Grundig	0056		
Harman/Kardon	0056		
Magnavox	0056		
Marantz	0056		
Myryad	0056		
Optimus	0054		
Philips	0056		
Pioneer	0054		
Polk Audio	0056		
RCA	0054		
Revox	0056		
Sansui	0056		
Sony	0270		
Thorens	0056		
Wards	0054		

### LASER DISK

#### Source button name : AUX2

Course Button name : AOXE		
Brand name	Setup code	
Carver	0091	
Denon	0086	
Marantz	0091	
Mitsubishi	0086	
NAD	0086	
Nagsmi	0086	
Optimus	0086	
Philips	0091	
Pioneer	0086	
Salora	0091	
Sony	0228	
Telefunken	0086	

#### CD/CD-R PLAYER

#### Source button name : CD. CDR. MD

Source button name. CD, CDH, MD		
Brand name	Setup code	
Aiwa	0184	
Arcam	0184	
Audio Research	0184	
AudioTon	0184	
Audiolab	0184	
Audiomeca	0184	
Caim	0184	
California Audio Labs	0056	
Carver	0184, 0206	
Cyrus	0184	
DKK	0027	
DMX Electronics	0184	
Denon	0900	
Dynamic Bass	0206	
Emerson	0332	
Fisher	0206	

#### CD/CD-R PLAYER

#### Source button name : CD, CDR, MD

Source button	name : CD, CDR, MD
Brand name	Setup code
Genexxa	0059, 0332
Goodmans	0332
Grundig	0184
Harman/ Kardon	0184, 0200
Hitachi	0059
JVC	0099
Kenwood	0708, 0653, 0055, 0064
Krell	0184
LXI	0332
Linn	0184
MCS	0056
Magnavox	0184, 0332
Marantz	0653, 0056, 0184
Matsui	0184
Memorex	0332
Meridian	0184
Micromega	0184
Miro	0027
Mission	0184
Myryad	0184
NAD	0027
NSM	0184
Naim	0184
Onkyo	0895
Optimus	0027, 0059, 0064, 0206, 0332
Panasonic	0056
Philips	0653, 0184
Pioneer	0059, 0332
Polk Audio	0184
Proton	0184
QED	0184
Quad	0184
Quasar	0056
RCA	0059, 0206, 0332
Realistic	0206
Revox	0184
Rotel	0184
SAE	0184
Sansui	0184, 0332
Sanyo	0206
Scott	0332
Sears	0332
Sharp	0888, 0064
Simaudio	0184
Sonic Frontiers	0184
Sony	0517, 0027
Symphonic	0332
TAG McLaren	0184
Tandy	0059
Technics	0056
Thorens	0184
Thule	0184
	0184
Universum Victor	0099
Wards	0184
vvdIUS	U10 <del>1</del>

	I V
Source butte	on name :TV
rand name	Setup code
IARANTZ	0001
V1 (TV, VDP)	
IARANTZ	0002
V2 (Plasma)	0002
GB	0543
OC	0478, 0120, 0207, 0087, 0057, 0205, 0036, 0119
	0135
SA	0131
WA	0036
cura	0036
ddison	0119, 0135, 0680
dmiral	0120, 0490, 0190
dvent	0788
iko	0119
kai	0839, 0729, 0057, 0036, 0235, 0388, 0543
kura	0291
lba	0036, 0064, 0398, 0695
merica Action	0207
mpro	0778
mstrad	0198, 0036, 0064, 0398, 0439, 0460, 0543
nam	0277, 0207, 0036
nam National	0277, 0677
nitech	0036
pex Digital	0775, 0792, 0794
udiosonic	0064, 0136
udiovox	0478, 0207, 0119, 0650
ang & Olufsen	0592
asic Line	0036
aur	0064, 0388, 0539
aysonic	0207
eaumark	0205
eko	0397, 0513, 0741, 0742
ell & Howell	0181
eon	0064
laupunkt	0222
lue Sky	0695, 1064
ondstec	0274
radford	0207
randt	0136, 0362
roksonic	0263, 0490
ush	0036, 0064, 0398, 0401, 0695, 1064
CE	0064
GE	0274
TC	0274
XC	0207
andle	0057
arnivale	0057
arver	0081, 0197
ascade	0036
athay	0064
elebrity	0027
elera	0792
enturion	0064
hanahana	0700

Changhong

Ching Tai

0792

0036, 0119

	TV
Source butt	on name :TV
Brand name	Setup code
Chun Yun	0027, 0207, 0036, 0119
Chung Hsin	0207, 0080, 0135
Cimline	0036
Cineral	0478, 0119
Citizen	0087, 0057, 0119
Clarion	0207
Clarivox	0064
Clatronic	0274, 0397
Condor	0347, 0397
Conrac	0835
Contec	0207, 0036
Craig	0207
Crosley	0081
Crown	0207, 0036, 0064, 0397, 0445
Curtis Mathes	0074, 0081, 0181, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0729, 0057
	0172, 0193, 1174, 1374
Daewoo	0181, 0478, 0207, 0057, 0205, 1688, 0036, 0064
	0119, 0135, 0197, 0401, 0650, 0661
Dansai	0064
Dayton	0036
De Graaf	0235, 0575
Decca	0064, 0543
Denon	0172
Digatron	0064
Dixi	0036, 0064
Dumont	0044
Dwin	0747, 0801
ECE	0064
Elbe	0286
Electroband	0027
Elin	0064, 0575
Elite	0347
Elta	0036
Emerson	0181, 0263, 0490, 0207, 0205, 0388, 0650
Envision	0057, 0840
Epson	0860
Erres	0064
Ether	0057, 0036
Etron	0036
Europhon	0543
Ferguson	0064, 0100, 0136, 0265, 0314, 0362, 0587
Fidelity	0388
Finlandia	0235, 0373
Finlux	0064, 0131, 0132, 0373, 0543
Firstar	0263, 0036
Firstline	0036, 0274, 0695
Fisher	0181, 0131, 0235, 0397
Flint	0482
Formenti	0064, 0347
Fortress	0120
Frontech	0190, 0274, 0291
Fujitsu	0710, 0836
Funai	0207, 0198, 0291
Futuretech	0207

TV		
Source butt	on name :TV	
Brand name	Setup code	
GE	0074, 0078, 0478, 0207, 0057, 0205, 1481, 0119	
	0587, 1174, 1374	
GEC	0064, 0543	
Gateway	1782, 1783	
Geloso	0036	
Genexxa	0190	
Gibralter	0044, 0057	
GoldStar	0181, 0057, 0205, 0064, 0136, 0404	
Goodmans	0064, 0398, 0401, 0661	
Gorenje	0397	
Gradiente	0080, 0197	
Graetz	0190, 0388	
Granada	0064, 0235, 0366, 0543	
Grandin	0637	
Grundig	0064, 0222, 0514, 0583, 0614	
Grunpy	0207	
HCM	0036, 0439	
Hallmark	0205	
Hankook	0207, 0057, 0205	
Hanseatic	0064, 0347, 0388, 0455, 0583	
Hantarex	0543	
Harman/Kardon	0081	
Harvard	0207	
Havermy	0120	
Hello Kitty	0478	
Hinari	0036, 0064	
Hisawa	0482	
Hitachi	0057, 0205, 1172, 0172, 1283, 0036, 0119,	
i ilidoi ii	0132,0136, 0190, 0252, 0383, 0508, 0575, 0605	
Hua Tun	0036	
Huanyu	0401	
Hypson	0064, 0291	
ICE	0291, 0398	
ITS	0398	
ITT	0190, 0388, 0575	
Imperial Indiana	0274, 0397, 0445	
Indiana Infinity	0064 0081	
Ingelen	0190 0543	
Inno Hit		
Innova	0064	
Inteq	0044	
Interfunk	0064, 0190, 0274, 0388, 0539	
Intervision	0064, 0291, 0404	
JBL	0081	
JCB	0027	
JVC	0490, 0080, 0398, 0680, 0710	
Jean	0183, 0078, 0263, 0036, 0119	
Jensen	0788	
KEC	0207	
KTV	0207, 0057	
Kaisui	0036	
Kapsch	0190	
Karcher	0637	

Brand name	Setup code
Kathrein	0583
Kendo	0064
Kenwood	0057
Kneissel	0286, 0462
Kolin	0207, 0080, 0135
Korpel	0064
Koyoda	0036
L&S Electronic	0835
LG	0087, 0057, 0205, 0064, 0135, 0741
LXI	0074, 0081, 0181, 0183, 0205
Leyco	0064, 0291
Liesenk & Tter	0064
Loewe	0539
Luxor	0383, 0388
M Electronic	0036, 0064, 0131, 0132, 0136, 0190, 0314, 037
IVI LIECTIONIC	0401, 0507
MGA	
MTC	0177, 0057, 0205
	0087, 0057, 0539
Magnadyne	0274, 0543
Magnafon	0543
Magnavox	0081, 0057, 1481, 1281
Manesth	0291, 0347
Mark	0064
Matsui	0036, 0064, 0235, 0398, 0514, 0543
Matsushita	0277, 0677
Mediator	0064
Medion	0695, 0835, 1064
Megatron	0205, 0172
Memorex	0181, 0277, 0490, 0177, 0205, 0036, 1064
Metz	0474
Micromaxx	0835
Microstar	0835
Midland	0074, 0044, 0078
Minerva	0514
Minoka	0439
Mitsubishi	0181, 0277, 0120, 0263, 0207, 0177, 1277, 005
	0205, 0135, 0539, 0863
Mivar	0318, 0319, 0543, 0636
Motorola	0120
Multitech	0207, 0036
Myryad	0583
NAD	0183, 0205, 0388, 0893
NEC	0181, 0183, 0078, 0057, 0205, 0036, 0197, 048
	0524, 1731
NEI	0064
NTC	0119
Neckermann	0064, 0583
Netsat	0064, 0363
Newave	0120, 0205, 0036, 0119
Nikkai	
	0064, 0291
Nikko Nakia	0057, 0205, 0119
Nokia	0388, 0500, 0507, 0575, 0658
Norcent	0775, 0851
Nordmende	0136, 0314, 0587

TV

Brand name	Setup code
Onwa	0207, 0460
Optimus	0181, 0277, 0193, 0677
Optonica	0120
Orion	0263, 0490, 0064, 0347, 0543
Osaki	0291, 0439
Otto Versand	0064, 0347, 0539, 0583
Palladium	0397, 0445
Panama	0291
Panasonic	0081, 0277, 0078, 0064, 0190, 0677, 1437
Pathe Cinema	0265, 0347
Pausa	0036
	0074, 0183, 0078, 0087, 0057, 0205, 1374
Penney Perdio	
Philco	0347
FIIICO	0081, 0490, 0207, 0057, 0205, 0172, 1688, 0064
Dhiling	0274
Philips	0081, 0027, 0078, 0057, 0205, 1481, 0064, 0119
Dhanala	0135, 0401, 0583, 0717
Phonola Dilet	0064
Pilot	0057
Pioneer	0193, 0136, 0190, 0314, 0706, 0787, 0893
Portland	0119
Prandoni-Prince	0543
Prima	0788
Prism	0078
Profex	0036, 0388
Proscan	0074
Protech	0036, 0064, 0274, 0291, 0445, 0695
Proton	0057, 0205, 0036
Pulsar	0044
Quasar	0277, 0078, 0677
Quelle	0064, 0131, 0388, 0539
R-Line	0064
RCA	0074, 0027, 0057, 0205, 1474, 1481, 0117, 0119,
	0706, 1074, 1174, 1274, 1374, 1574
RFT	0455
RadioShack	0074, 0181, 0207, 0057, 0205
Radiola	0064
Radiomarelli	0543
Realistic	0181, 0207, 0057, 0205
Rediffusion	0388
Reoc	0741
Revox	0064
Rex	0190, 0286, 0291
Roadstar	0036, 0291, 0445
Runco	0044, 0057, 0524, 0630
SBR	0064
SEG	0291, 0695
SEI	0543
SKY	0064
SSS	0207
Saba	0136, 0190, 0314, 0362
Saccs	0265
Sagem	0637
Saisho	0036, 0291, 0543
Salora	0190, 0383, 0388, 0575

TV

Sambers         0543           Sampo         0181, 0120, 0057, 0205, 0198, 0036, 0119, 0677, 1782           Samsung         0181, 0087, 0839, 0729, 0057, 0205, 0036, 0064, 0117, 0119, 0291, 0397, 0583, 0614, 0645, 0793, 0841           Sansei         0478           Sansui         0490           Schneider         0064, 0274, 0398, 0695           Scotch         0205           Scotth         0263, 0207, 0205           Sears         0074, 0081, 0181, 0183, 0205, 0198           Seleco         0190, 0286           Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120, 0057, 0677           Shen Ying         0036, 0119           Sherg Chia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skyajiant         0207           Skyajiant         0207           Skyajiant         0207           Skyajiant         0207           Skyajiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonilton         0235           Sonudesign         0207, 0205		IV
Sambers         0543           Sampo         0181, 0120, 0057, 0205, 0198, 0036, 0119, 0677, 1782           Samsung         0181, 0087, 0839, 0729, 0057, 0205, 0036, 0064, 0117, 0119, 0291, 0397, 0583, 0614, 0645, 0793, 0841           Sansei         0478           Sansui         0490           Schaub Loren         0384           Schneider         0064, 0274, 0398, 0695           Scotch         0205           Scotth         0263, 0207, 0205           Sears         0074, 0081, 0181, 0183, 0205, 0198           Seleco         0190, 0286           Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120, 0057, 0677           Shen Ying         0036, 0119           Sheng Chia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skyajiant         0207           Skyajiant         0207           Skyajiant         0207           Skyajiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solonko         0036, 0064           Sonnolor         0190, 0235           Soundesign         0207, 0205 <th></th> <th></th>		
Sampo         0181, 0120, 0057, 0205, 0198, 0036, 0119, 0677, 1782           Samsung         0181, 0087, 0839, 0729, 0057, 0205, 0036, 0064, 0117, 0119, 0291, 0397, 0583, 0614, 0645, 0793, 0841           Sansei         0478           Sansui         0490           Sanyo         0181, 0207, 0131, 0235, 0366, 0826           Schaub Lorenz         0388           Schneider         0064, 0274, 0398, 0695           Scotth         0205           Scott         0263, 0207, 0205           Sears         0074, 0081, 0181, 0183, 0205, 0198           Seleco         0190, 0286           Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120, 0057, 0677           Sheng Chia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygjant         0207           Skygjant         0207           Skygjant         0207           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonop         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundesign         0207, 0205	Brand name	Setup code
1782	Sambers	
0117, 0119, 0291, 0397, 0583, 0614, 0645, 0793, 0841  Sansei 0478  Sansui 0490  Sanyo 0181, 0207, 0131, 0235, 0366, 0826  Schaub Lorenz 0388  Schneider 0064, 0274, 0398, 0695  Scotch 0205  Scott 0263, 0207, 0205  Sears 0074, 0081, 0181, 0183, 0205, 0198  Seleco 0190, 0286  Semivox 0207  Semp 0183  Sharp 0120, 0057, 0677  Shen Ying 036, 0119  Sheng Chia 0120, 0263, 0036  Siarem 0543  Siemens 0064, 0222  Sinudyne 0543  Skantic 0383  Skryjiant 0207  Skyyiant 0207  Sonitron 0235  Sonoko 036, 0064  Sonolor 0190, 0235  Sonolor 0190, 0235  Sonolec 0064  Sony 1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678  Soundesign 0207, 0205  Soundewave 0064, 0445  Sowa 0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119  Squareview 0198  Standite 0207  Sterm 0190, 0286  Supreme 0027  Sterm 0190, 0286  Supreme	Sampo	
Sansei         0478           Sansui         0490           Sanyo         0181, 0207, 0131, 0235, 0366, 0826           Schaub Lorenz         0388           Schneider         0064, 0274, 0398, 0695           Scotch         0205           Scott         0263, 0207, 0205           Sears         0074, 0081, 0181, 0183, 0205, 0198           Seleco         0190, 0286           Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120, 0057, 0677           Shen Ying         0036, 0119           Sheng Chia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitco         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445	Samsung	0181, 0087, 0839, 0729, 0057, 0205, 0036, 0064,
Sansui         0490           Sanyo         0181,0207,0131,0235,0366,0826           Schaub Lorenz         0388           Schneider         0064,0274,0398,0695           Scotth         0263           Scott         0263,0207,0205           Sears         0074,0081,0181,0183,0205,0198           Seleco         0190,0286           Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120,0057,0677           Shen Ying         0036,0119           Sheng Chia         0120,0263,0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064,0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonnoko         0036,0064           Sonnoko         0036,0064           Sony         1127,0027,0677,0861,1532,1678           Soundesign         0207,0205           Soundwave         0064,0445           Sowa         0183,0078,0087,0205,0119           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190,057,0198	-	
Sanyo         0181, 0207, 0131, 0235, 0366, 0826           Schaub Lorenz         0388           Schneider         0064, 0274, 0398, 0695           Scott         0263           Scott         0263, 0207, 0205           Sears         0074, 0081, 0181, 0183, 0205, 0198           Seleco         0190, 0286           Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120, 0057, 0677           Shen Ying         0036, 0119           Sheng Chia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skywgiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonnolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286	Sansei	0478
Schaub Lorenz         0388           Schneider         0064, 0274, 0398, 0695           Scotth         0263           Scott         0263, 0207, 0205           Sears         0074, 0081, 0181, 0183, 0205, 0198           Seleco         0190, 0286           Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120, 0057, 0677           Sheng Chia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skywgiant         0207           Skywgiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sound         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania <t< td=""><td>Sansui</td><td>0490</td></t<>	Sansui	0490
Schneider         0064, 0274, 0398, 0695           Scotch         0205           Scott         0263, 0207, 0205           Sears         0074, 0081, 0181, 0183, 0205, 0198           Seleco         0190, 0286           Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120, 0057, 0677           Shen Ying         0036, 0119           Sheng Chia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sonntec         0064           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starfite         0207           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic	Sanyo	0181, 0207, 0131, 0235, 0366, 0826
Scotch         0205           Scott         0263, 0207, 0205           Sears         0074, 0081, 0181, 0183, 0205, 0198           Seleco         0190, 0286           Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120, 0057, 0677           Shen Ying         0036, 0119           Sheng Chia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skygiant         0207           Skygiant out         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Sylvania         0081, 005	Schaub Lorenz	0388
Scott         0263, 0207, 0205           Sears         0074, 0081, 0181, 0183, 0205, 0198           Seleco         0190, 0286           Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120, 0057, 0677           Shen Ying         0036, 0119           Sheng Chia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sonnec         0064           Sonnec         0064           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198	Schneider	0064, 0274, 0398, 0695
Sears         0074, 0081, 0181, 0183, 0205, 0198           Seleco         0190, 0286           Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120, 0057, 0677           Shen Ying         0036, 0119           Shen Ghia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Skemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Soundesign         0207, 027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         02207, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064	Scotch	0205
Sears         0074, 0081, 0181, 0183, 0205, 0198           Seleco         0190, 0286           Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120, 0057, 0677           Shen Ying         0036, 0119           Shen Ghia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Skemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Soundesign         0207, 027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         02207, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064	Scott	0263, 0207, 0205
Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120,0057,0677           Shen Ying         0036,0119           Sheng Chia         0120,0263,0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064,0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygjant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036,0064           Sonolor         0190,0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127,0027,0677,0861,1532,1678           Soundesign         0207,0205           Soundwave         0064,0445           Sowa         0183,0078,0087,0205,0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190,0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081,0057,0198           Symphonic         0207,0198           Symphonic         0207,0198           Symphonic         02027,0478,0120,0087	Sears	
Semivox         0207           Semp         0183           Sharp         0120,0057,0677           Shen Ying         0036,0119           Sheng Chia         0120,0263,0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064,0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygjant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036,0064           Sonolor         0190,0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127,0027,0677,0861,1532,1678           Soundesign         0207,0205           Soundwave         0064,0445           Sowa         0183,0078,0087,0205,0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190,0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081,0057,0198           Symphonic         0207,0198           Symphonic         0207,0198           Symphonic         02027,0478,0120,0087	Seleco	
Semp         0183           Sharp         0120, 0057, 0677           Sheny         0120, 0057, 0677           Sheny (Chia)         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Sygnco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119	Semivox	0207
Sharp         0120, 0057, 0677           Shen Ying         0036, 0119           Sheng Chia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starfite         0207           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi		
Shen Ying         0036, 0119           Sheng Chia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sylsline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0440           Tv/S         0490		0120, 0057, 0677
Sheng Chia         0120, 0263, 0036           Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Sterm         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sylsline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0		
Siarem         0543           Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skygworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         02207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sylsline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490		
Siemens         0064, 0222           Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Syrlvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119		
Sinudyne         0543           Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Sterm         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Syrlvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036		
Skantic         0383           Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundesign         00207, 0205           Sowa         0183, 0474           Sowa         0183, 0474           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036		
Skygiant         0207           Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Sterite         0207           Sterm         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Skyworth         0064           Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Sterin         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0440           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Solavox         0190           Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0440           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Sonitron         0235           Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Sympco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tanhiko         0119, 0677		
Sonoko         0036, 0064           Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Sonolor         0190, 0235           Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Sontec         0064           Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		•
Sony         1127, 0027, 0677, 0861, 1532, 1678           Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Soundesign         0207, 0205           Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai YI         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Soundwave         0064, 0445           Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Sowa         0183, 0078, 0087, 0205, 0119           Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Squareview         0198           Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		<u> </u>
Standard         0036           Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Starlite         0207           Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Sysnco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Stern         0190, 0286           Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Supreme         0027           Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Sylvania         0081, 0057, 0198           Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		<u> </u>
Symphonic         0207, 0198           Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Synco         0027, 0478, 0120, 0087, 0205, 0119           Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Sysline         0064           T + A         0474           TCM         0835           TMK         0205           TNCi         0044           TVS         0490           Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
T+A 0474 TCM 0835 TMK 0205 TNCi 0044 TVS 0490 Tacico 0205, 0036, 0119 Tai Yi 0036 Tandy 0120, 0190 Tashiko 0119, 0677		
TCM 0835 TMK 0205 TNCi 0044 TVS 0490 Tacico 0205, 0036, 0119 Tai Yi 0036 Tandy 0120, 0190 Tashiko 0119, 0677		
TMK 0205 TNCi 0044 TVS 0490 Tacico 0205, 0036, 0119 Tai Yi 0036 Tandy 0120, 0190 Tashiko 0119, 0677		
TNCi 0044 TVS 0490 Tacico 0205, 0036, 0119 Tai Yi 0036 Tandy 0120, 0190 Tashiko 0119, 0677		
TVS 0490 Tacico 0205, 0036, 0119 Tai Yi 0036 Tandy 0120, 0190 Tashiko 0119, 0677		
Tacico         0205, 0036, 0119           Tai Yi         0036           Tandy         0120, 0190           Tashiko         0119, 0677		
Tai Yi 0036 Tandy 0120, 0190 Tashiko 0119, 0677		
Tandy 0120, 0190 Tashiko 0119, 0677		
Tashiko 0119, 0677		
·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Tatung 0081, 0181, 0183, 0078, 0087, 0036, 0064, 0543		·
	Tatung	0081, 0181, 0183, 0078, 0087, 0036, 0064, 0543

	TV
Source button	name :TV
Brand name	Setup code
Teac	0036, 0064, 0291, 0439, 0445, 0482, 0695, 1064
Tec	0274
Technema	0347
Technics	0277, 0078, 0677
Techwood	0078
Teco	0078, 0120, 0205, 0036, 0119, 0291, 0680
Teknika	0081, 0207, 0177, 0087, 0119
Telefunken	0729, 0136, 0289, 0362, 0652
Telemeister	0347
Teletech	0036
Tensai	0347
Tera	0057
Thomson	1474, 0136, 0314, 0587, 0652
Thorn	0064, 0131, 0388, 0539
Toshiba	0181, 0183, 0087, 1283, 0535, 0645, 0677, 0859,
	1383, 1683, 1731
Triumph	0543
Tuntex	0057, 0036, 0119
Uher	0347
Universum	0064, 0131, 0132, 0291, 0373, 0397, 0519
Vector Research	0057
Vestel	0064
Victor	0277, 0080, 0677, 0680
Videosat	0274
Vidikron	0081
Vidtech	0205
ViewSonic	1782
Vision	0347
Voxson	0190
Waltham	0383
Wards	0081, 0057, 0205, 0893
Watson	0064, 0347
Waycon	0183
White Westinghouse	0490, 0064, 0347,0650
Yamaha	0057, 0796, 0860
Yapshe	0277
Yoko	0064, 0291
7 10	0044 0400 0005 0440

	VCR		
Source butto	Source button name : VCR		
Brand name	Setup code		
ASA	0064, 0108		
Admiral	0075		
Adventura	0027		
Aiko	0305		
Aiwa	0064, 0027, 0334, 0375, 0379		
Akai	0068, 0342		
Akiba	0099		
Alba	0099, 0305, 0342, 0379		
America Action	0305		
American High	0062		
Amstrad	0027		

0044, 0490, 0205, 0119

Zenith

	VCn
Source buttor	n name : VCR
Brand name	Setup code
Anam	0064, 0267, 0305, 0253, 0507
Anam National	0253, 1589
Anitech	0099
Asha	0267
Asuka	0064
Audiovox	0064, 0305
Baird	0027, 0131, 0068
Basic Line	0099, 0305
Beaumark	0267
Bell & Howell	0131
Blaupunkt	0253
Brandt	0347
Brandt Electronic	0068
Broksonic	0211, 0375, 1506
Bush	0099, 0305, 0379
CCE	0099, 0305
CGE	0027
Calix	0027
Canon	0062
Carver	0108
Cimline	0099
Cineral	0305
Citizen	0064, 0305, 1305
Colt	0099
Combitech	0379
Craig	0064, 0074, 0267, 0099
Crown	0099, 0305
Curtis Mathes	0087, 0062, 0068, 1062
Cybernex	0267
Cyrus	0108
Daewoo	0072, 0131, 0305, 0669, 1305
Dansai	0099
De Graaf	0069
Decca	0108, 0027
Denon	0069
Dual	0068
Dumont	0108, 0027, 0131
Dynatech	0027
ESC	0267, 0305
Elcatech	0099
Electrohome	0064
Electrophonic	0064
Emerex	0059
Emerson	0062, 0064, 0211, 0267, 0072, 0027, 0070, 0305,
	1305. 1506
Ferguson	1305, 1506 0068, 0347
	0068, 0347
Fidelity	0068, 0347 0027
Fidelity Finlandia	0068, 0347 0027 0108, 0131
Fidelity Finlandia Finlux	0068, 0347 0027 0108, 0131 0108, 0027, 0069, 0131
Ferguson Fidelity Finlandia Finlux Firstline Fisher	0068, 0347 0027 0108, 0131 0108, 0027, 0069, 0131 0064, 0072, 0070, 0099
Fidelity Finlandia Finlux Firstline Fisher	0068, 0347 0027 0108, 0131 0108, 0027, 0069, 0131 0064, 0072, 0070, 0099 0074, 0131
Fidelity Finlandia Finlux Firstline Fisher Fuji	0068, 0347 0027 0108, 0131 0108, 0027, 0069, 0131 0064, 0072, 0070, 0099 0074, 0131 0062, 0060
Fidelity Finlandia Finlux Firstline Fisher	0068, 0347 0027 0108, 0131 0108, 0027, 0069, 0131 0064, 0072, 0070, 0099 0074, 0131

VCR

Source buttor	n name : VCR
Brand name	Setup code
GEC	0108
Garrard	0027
General	0072
Go Video	0459
GoldHand	0099
GoldStar	0064, 0252, 0507, 1264
Goodmans	0064, 0027, 0099, 0305
Gradiente	0027
Graetz	0267, 0131, 0068
Granada	0108, 0131
Grandin	0064, 0027, 0099
Grundig	0108, 0099, 0253, 0374
HCM	0099
HI-Q	0074
Hanseatic	
	0064
Harley Davidson	0027
Harman/Kardon	0108
Harwood	0099
Hinari	0267, 0099, 0379
Hitachi	0064, 0267, 0027, 0069, 0068
Hughes	0069
Network Systems	
Hypson	0099
ITT	0267, 0131, 0068
ITV	0064, 0305
Imperial	0027
Interfunk	0108
JVC	0072, 0094, 0068
Jensen	0068
KEC	0064, 0305
KLH	0099
Kaisui	0099
Kenwood	0094, 0068
Kodak	0062, 0064
Kolin	0070, 0068
Korpel	0099
LG	0064, 0072, 0069, 0507
LXI	0064
Lenco	0305
Leyco	0099
Lloyd's	0027
Loewe	0064, 0108, 1589
Logik	0267, 0099
Luxor	0075, 0131, 0070
M Electronic	0027
MEI	0062
MGA	0267, 0070
MGN Technology	0267
MTC	0267, 0027
Magnasonic	1305
Magnavox	0062, 0066, 0108, 0027, 1808
Magnin	0267
Manesth	0072, 0099
Marantz	0062, 0108
Marta	0064
iviaita	UUUT

VCR

	VCR
Source butto	on name : VCR
Brand name	Setup code
Matsui	0375, 0379
Matsushita	0062
Medion	0375
Memorex	0062, 0064, 0075, 0066, 0074, 0267, 0027, 0131
	0334, 0375, 1264
Memphis	0099
Metz	0064, 0374, 1589
Minolta	0069
Mitsubishi	0108, 0094, 0070, 0068, 0834
Motorola	0062, 0075
Multitech	0027, 0099
Murphy	0027
Myryad	0108
NAD	0131
NEC	0062, 0064, 0075, 0131, 0094, 0068
National	0253
Neckermann	0108
Nesco	0099
Newave	0064
Nikko	0064
Noblex	0267
Nokia	0267, 0131, 0068
Nordmende	0068, 0347
Oceanic	0027, 0068
Okano	0342, 0375
Olympus	0062, 0253
Optimus	0064, 0075, 0131, 0459
Orion	0211, 0375, 0379, 1506
Osaki	0064, 0027, 0099
Otto Versand	0108
Palladium	0064, 0068, 0099
Panasonic	0062, 0252, 0253, 0643, 1062, 1589
Pathe Marconi	0068
Penney	0062, 0064, 0267, 0069, 1062, 1264
Pentax	0069
Perdio	0027
Philco	0062
Philips	0062, 0108, 0645, 1108, 1208
Phonola	0108
Pilot	0064
Pioneer	0108, 0069, 0094
Polk Audio	0108
Profitronic	0267
Proline	0027
Proscan	0087, 1087
Protec	0099
Pulsar	0066
Pye	0108
Quasar	0062, 1062
Quelle	0108
RCA	0087, 0062, 0267, 0069, 0834, 1062, 1087
RadioShack	0027
Radiola	0108
Radix	0064
Randex	0064

	VCR
Source butt	on name : VCR
Brand name	Setup code
Realistic	0062, 0064, 0075, 0074, 0027, 0131
Reoc	0375
ReplayTV	0641, 0643
Rex	0068
Roadstar	0064, 0267, 0099, 0305
Runco	0066
SBR	0108
SEG	0267
SEI	0108
STS	0069
Saba	0068, 0347
Salora	0070
Sampo	0064, 0075
Samsung	0267, 0072, 0459
Sanky	0075, 0066
Sansui	0027, 0094, 0068, 1506
Sanyo	0074, 0267, 0131
Saville	0379
Schaub Lorenz	
Schneider	0027, 0131, 0068 0108, 0027, 0099
Scott	0211, 0072, 0070
Sears	0062, 0064, 0074, 0027, 0069, 0131, 1264
Seleco	0068
Semp	0072
Sharp	0075, 0834
Shintom	0131, 0099
Shogun	0267
Siemens	0064, 0108, 0131
Silva	0064
Singer	0072, 0099
Sinudyne	0108
Sonic Blue	0641, 0643
Sontec	0064
Sony	0062, 0059, 0060, 0027, 0663, 1259
Sunkai	0375
Sunstar	0027
Suntronic	0027
Sylvania	0062, 0108, 0027, 0070, 1808
Symphonic	0027
TMK	0267
Tandy	0027, 0131
Tashiko	0064, 0027
Diamond	0795
Digitrex	0699
Emerson	0618
Tatung	0108, 0072, 0027, 0094, 0068
Teac	0027, 0068, 0305, 0334, 0669
Technics	0062, 0253
Teco	0062, 0064, 0075, 0068
Teknika	0062, 0064, 0027
Teleavia	0068
Telefunken	0068, 0347
Tenosal	0099
Tensai	0027
Thomas	0027

Thomas

0027

	VCR
Source button	name : VCR
Brand name	Setup code
Thomson	0087, 0094, 0068, 0347
Thorn	0131, 0068
Tivo	0645, 0663
Toshiba	0108, 0072, 0094, 0070, 0068, 0872
Totevision	0064, 0267
Uher	0267
Unitech	0267
Universum	0064, 0108, 0267, 0027
Vector	0072
Victor	0094, 0068
Video Concepts	0072
Videomagic	0064
Videosonic	0267
Villain	0027
Wards	0087, 0062, 0075, 0074, 0108, 0267, 0027, 0069,
	0099
White Westinghouse	0099
XR-1000	0062, 0027, 0099
Yamaha	0068
Yamishi	0099
Yokan	0099
Yoko	0267
Zenith	0066, 0060, 0027, 1506

	DVD
Source button	name : DVD
Brand name	Setup code
MARANTZ DVD1	0001
MARANTZ DVD2	0002
Acoustic Solutions	0757
Alba	0744
Amstrad	0740
Apex Digital	0699, 0744, 0782, 0821, 0823, 0857, 1127
Blaupunkt	0744
Blue Parade	0598
Bush	0740
Centrex	0699
Clatronic	0815
CyberHome	0741
DVD2000	0548
Daewoo	0811, 0797
Dansai	0797
Decca	0797
Denon	0517
Enterprise	0618
Fisher	0697
GE	0549, 0744
Go Video	0742
GoldStar	0768
Gradiente	0678
Greenhill	0744
Grundig	0566
Hitachi	0600, 0691
Hiteker	0699

Zeus

0811

Source butto	n name : DVD
Brand name	Setup code
JVC	0585, 0650
KLH	0744
Kenwood	0517, 0561
Koss	0678
LG	0768
Limit	0795
Magnavox	0530, 0702
Memorex	0858
MiCO	0750
Microsoft	0549
Mintek	0744
Mitsubishi	0548
Mustek	0757
Nesa	0744
Onkyo	0530
Oritron	0678
Palsonic	0699
Panasonic	0517, 0659, 1389
Philips	0530, 0566, 0673, 0881
Pioneer	0552, 0598, 0658, 0659
Polk Audio	0566
Proscan	0549
Qwestar	0678
RCA	0549, 0598, 0744
Rotel	0650
SM Electronic	0757
Samsung	0600
Sanyo	0697
Sharp	0657
Sherwood	0797
Shinsonic	0560
Slim Art	0811
Sony	0560, 0891
Sylvania	0702
Tatung	0797
Teac	0598, 0744
Technics	0517
Theta Digital	0598
Thomson	0549
Toshiba	0530
Urban Concepts	0530
XBox	0549
Yamaha	0517, 0566, 0572
Zenith	0530, 0618, 0768
7	0011

DVD

# DIRECT BUTTON FUNCTIONS

Source button name : AMP

Source button name : AMP		
PAGE	Command	Note
PAGE 1	1 AUTO	SELECT AUTO SURROUND
	2 🔟	SELECT DOLBY MODE
	3 DTS	SELECT DTS MODE
	4 EX/ES	SELECT EX/ES
	5 DIRECT	SELECT PURE DIRECT
PAGE 2	1 MCH-ST	SELECT MULTI CHANNEL
		STEREO
	2 STEREO	SELECT STEREO MODE
	3 VIRTUA	SELECT VIRTUAL MODE
	4 CS-II	SELECT CS-II MODE
	5 HT-EQ	1
PAGE 3	1 NIGHT	NIGHT MODE ON/OFF
	2 BASS +	BASS +
	3 BASS -	BASS -
	4 TREB +	TREBLE +
	5TREB -	TREBLE -
PAGE 4	1 MULTI	MULTI ROOM ON/OFF
	2 M-SPKR	MULTI SPEAKER ON/OFF
	3 A/D	SELECT ANALOG/DIGITAL
	4 V-OFF	VIDEO OFF
	5 AUDIO	_

Source button name : TUNER

Source button name : TUNER		
PAGE	Command	Note
PAGE 1	1 FM	SELECT FM
	2 AM	SELECT AM
	3 XM/DAB	SELECT XM RADIO
	4 T-MODE	SELECT MONO/STEREO
	5 BAND	SELECT RADIO BAND
PAGE 2	1 SCAN +	FREQUENCY SCAN UP
	2 SCAN -	FREQUENCY SCAN DOWN
	3 T-MODE	SELECT MONO/STEREO
	4 P-SCAN	SELECT PRESET SCAN
	5 P-INFO	SHOW PRESET INFORMATION
PAGE 3	1 DISP	DISPLAY
European	2 PTY	RDS PTY
model only	3 AF	RDS ALTERNATE FREQEMCY
	4 STM	RDS STATION MODE
	5 DWR	RDS DSR WAVE LANGUAGE
PAGE 4	1 SCAN +	FREQUENCY SCAN UP
	2 SCAN -	FREQUENCY SCAN DOWN
	3 DISP	XM/RDS DISPLAY
	4 CAT +	CATEGORY SEARCH UP
	5 CAT -	CATEGORY SEARCH DOWN

Source button name : DVD

Source button name . DVD		
PAGE	Command	Note
PAGE 1	1 MENU	SELECTS MAIN MENU
	2 AUDIO	SELECT LANGUAGES
	3 SUB-T	SELECT SUB TITLE
	4 10+	DIGIT ENTRY +10
	5 TRAY	TRAY OPEN/CLOSE
PAGE 2	1 SETUP	SELECTS SETUP MENU
	2 ANGLE	SELECTS ANGLE
	3 OSD	ACTIVATES ON SCREEN DISPLAY
	4 FF	FAST FORWARD
	5 REW	REWIND
PAGE 3	1 SLOW	SLOW FORWARD
	2 L-PLAY	LAST PLAY
	3 SHUFLE	SHUFFLE PLAY
	4 REPEAT	REPEAT MODE
	5 A/B	REPEAT A TO B
PAGE 4	1 RETURN	RETURN TO MENU
	2 T/C	TITLE AND CHAPTER
	3 3-D	SURROUND ON/OFF
	4 TITLE	SELECTS TITLE MENU
	5 ZOOM	ZOOM MODE ON/OFF

Source button name : CD

COUITOC D	attori name .	00
PAGE	Command	Note
PAGE 1	1 DISC +	CD CHANGER NEXT DISC
	2 DISC -	CD CHANGER PREVIOUS DISC
	3 SHUFLE	SHUFFLE PLAY
	4 REPEAT	REPEAT
	5 TRAY	TRAY OPEN/CLOSE
PAGE 2	1 TEXT	ACTIVATE TEXT FUNCTION
	2 AMS	AUTO MUSIC SCAN
	3 SCROLL	SCROLL/RECALL
	4 FF	FAST FORWARD
	5 REW	REWIND
PAGE 3	1 DISC 1	CD CHANGER DISC 1
	2 DISC 2	CD CHANGER DISC 2
	3 DISC 3	CD CHANGER DISC 3
	4 DISC 4	CD CHANGER DISC 4
	5 DISC 5	CD CHANGER DISC 5
PAGE 4	1 UNIT	SELECT UNIT No.
	2 TITL-S	SELECT TITLE SEARCH
	3 TRACK	SELECT TRACK No.
	4 CATGRY	SELECT CATEGORY
	5 P-MODE	SELECT PLAY MODE

Source button name : VCR

PAGE	Command	Note
PAGE 1	1 TV/VCR	SELECT TV/VCR
	2 2XPLAY	TWICE NORMAL PLAYBACK
		SPEED
	3 SLOW	SLOW PLAYBACK SPEED
	4 STILL	STILL FRAME
	5 EJECT	EJECT
PAGE 2	1 OTR	ONE TOUCH RECORDING
	2 AUDIO	SELECT AUDIO MODE
	3 SKIP	SKIP TO NEXT PROG.MARKER
	4 FF	FAST FORWARD
	5 REW	REWIND
PAGE 3	1 VIS +	VHS INDEX SERCH NEXT
	2 VIS-	VHS INDEX SERCH PREVIOUS
	3	
	4	
	5	

Source button name : CDR

PAGE	Command	Note
PAGE 1	1 INPUT	SELECT INPUT SOURCE
	2 INCR	INCREMENTS TRACK No.
	3 SYNC-R	ACTIVATE SYNCRO
		RECORDING
	4 PROG	ACTIVATE PROGRAM MODE
	5 TRAY	TRAY OPEN/CLOSE
PAGE 2	1 SCROLL	SCROLL/RECALL
	2 FINAL	FINALIZES(WRITES TOC)
	3 BLANK	RECORDS BLANK
	4 FF	FAST FORWARD
	5 REW	REWIND
PAGE 3	1 BLANK	RECORDS BLANK
	2 REPEAT	ACTIVATE REPEAT MODE
	3	
	4	
	5	

Source button name : TAPE		
PAGE	Command	Note
PAGE 1	1 TAPE-A	SELECT TAPE DECK A
	2 TAPE-B	SELECT TAPE DECK B
	3 DIR	AUTO REVERSE DIRECTION
	4 TIME	TIME DISPLAY
	5 TRAY	TRAY OPEN/CLOSE
PAGE 2	1 AMS	AUTO MUSIC SCAN
	2	
	3	
	4 FF	FAST FORWARD
	5 REW	REWIND

Source button name : MD

Source bullon name . WD		
PAGE	Command	Note
PAGE 1	1 REPEAT	SELECTS REPEAT MODE
	2 SHUFLE	SELECTS SHUFFLE PLAY
	3 DISP	SELECTS DISPLAY MODE
	4 EDIT	SELECT EDIT MODE
	5 EJECT	EJECT
PAGE 2	1 SP/LP	SELECTS SP/LP MODE
	2 DELETE	SELECTS DELETE
	3 ENTER	SELECTS ENTER
	4 FF	FAST FORWARD
	5 REW	REWIND
PAGE 3	1 MARKER	SELECTS AUTO MARKER
	2 PROG	SELECTS PROGRAM MODE
	3 SYNC-R	SYNCRO REC
	4 CHAR	SELECTS CHARACTER MODE
	5	

Source button name : ALIX 2

Source button name . Aox 2		
PAGE	Command	Note
PAGE 1	1 SHUFFL	SELECT AUX1
	2 REPEAT	SELECT AUX2
	3 MODE	SELECT AUX3
	4 SORT	SELECT NET
	5 MUTE	
PAGE 2	1 INPUT+	INPUT SELECTOR FORWARD
	2 INPUT-	INPUT SELECTOR REVERSE
	3	
	4	
	5	

Source button name : AUX 1

Source button name . Aox 1		
PAGE	Command	Note
PAGE 1	1 SHUFFL	SELECT SHUFFLE PLAY
	2 REPEAT	SELECT REPEAT PLAY
	3 MODE	CHANGE USER INTERFACE MODE
	4 SORT	SORT DATA BASE
	5 MUTE	MUTE ON/OFF (TOGGLE)
PAGE 2	1 ALBUM+	NEXT ALBUM
	2 ALBUM-	PREVIOUS ALBUM
	3 LIST+	NEXT PLAY LIST
	4 LIST-	PREVIOUS PLAY LIST
	5	
PAGE 3	1 ARTIST	SORT ORDER (ARTIST)
	2 ALBUM	SORT ORDER (ALBUM)
	3 SONG	SORT ORDER (SONG)
	4 GENRE	SORT ORDER (GENRE)
	5 P-LIST	SORT ORDER (PLAY LIST)
PAGE 4	1 1 INPUT+	INPUT SELECTOR FORWARD
	2 INPUT-	INPUT SELECTOR REVERSE
	3	
	4	
	5	

### www.marantz.com

You can find your nearest authorized distributor or dealer on our website.

marantz® is a registered trademark.



Printed in China 07/2006 00M05CW851310 ecmf-d